A FIRST COURSE IN DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS

with Modeling Applications

Ziyad Asaad

https://www.facebook.com/GrinchaZ

TENTH EDITION

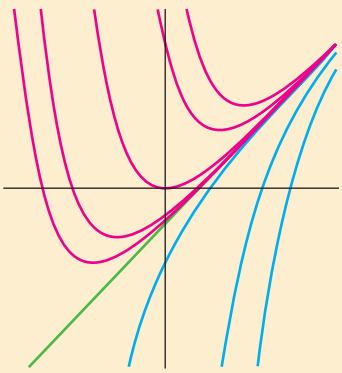
DENNIS G. ZILL

2 First-Order Differential Equations

2.1 Solution Curves Without a Solution
- **2.1.1** Direction Fields
- **2.1.2** Autonomous First-Order DEs

2.2 Separable Equations
2.3 Linear Equations
2.4 Exact Equations
2.5 Solutions by Substitutions
2.6 A Numerical Method

Chapter 2 in Review



The history of mathematics is rife with stories of people who devoted much of their lives to solving equations—algebraic equations at first and then eventually differential equations. In Sections 2.2–2.5 we will study some of the more important analytical methods for solving first-order DEs. However, before we start solving anything, you should be aware of two facts: It is possible for a differential equation to have no solutions, and a differential equation can possess solutions, yet there might not exist any analytical method for solving it. In Sections 2.1 and 2.6 we do not solve any DEs but show how to glean information about solutions directly from the equation itself. In Section 2.1 we see how the DE yields qualitative information about graphs that enables us to sketch renditions of solution curves. In Section 2.6 we use the differential equation to construct a procedure, called a numerical method, for approximating solutions.

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2.1 SOLUTION CURVES WITHOUT A SOLUTION

REVIEW MATERIAL

- The first derivative as slope of a tangent line
- The algebraic sign of the first derivative indicates increasing or decreasing

INTRODUCTION Let us imagine for the moment that we have in front of us a first-order differential equation $dy/dx = f(x, y)$, and let us further imagine that we can neither find nor invent a method for solving it analytically. This is not as bad a predicament as one might think, since the differential equation itself can sometimes "tell" us specifics about how its solutions "behave."

We begin our study of first-order differential equations with two ways of analyzing a DE qualitatively. Both these ways enable us to determine, in an approximate sense, what a solution curve must look like without actually solving the equation.

2.1.1 DIRECTION FIELDS

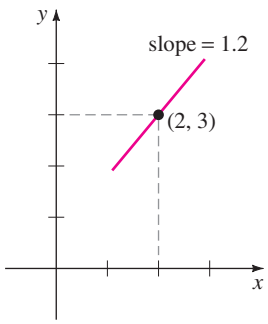
Some Fundamental Questions We saw in Section 1.2 that whenever $f(x, y)$ and $\partial f/\partial y$ satisfy certain continuity conditions, qualitative questions about existence and uniqueness of solutions can be answered. In this section we shall see that other qualitative questions about properties of solutions—How does a solution behave near a certain point? How does a solution behave as $x \to \infty$?—can often be answered when the function f depends solely on the variable y. We begin, however, with a simple concept from calculus:

A derivative dy/dx of a differentiable function $y = y(x)$ gives slopes of tangent lines at points on its graph.

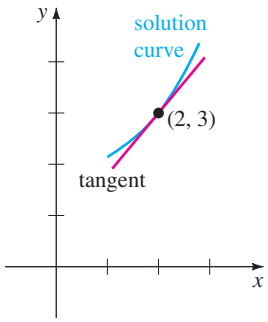
Slope Because a solution $y = y(x)$ of a first-order differential equation

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = f(x, y) \tag{1}$$

is necessarily a differentiable function on its interval I of definition, it must also be continuous on I. Thus the corresponding solution curve on I must have no breaks and must possess a tangent line at each point $(x, y(x))$. The function f in the normal form (1) is called the **slope function** or **rate function.** The slope of the tangent line at $(x, y(x))$ on a solution curve is the value of the first derivative dy/dx at this point, and we know from (1) that this is the value of the slope function $f(x, y(x))$. Now suppose that (x, y) represents any point in a region of the xy-plane over which the function f is defined. The value $f(x, y)$ that the function f assigns to the point represents the slope of a line or, as we shall envision it, a line segment called a **lineal element.** For example, consider the equation $dy/dx = 0.2xy$, where $f(x, y) = 0.2xy$. At, say, the point (2, 3) the slope of a lineal element is $f(2, 3) = 0.2(2)(3) = 1.2$. Figure 2.1.1(a) shows a line segment with slope 1.2 passing though (2, 3). As shown in Figure 2.1.1(b), *if* a solution curve also passes through the point (2, 3), it does so tangent to this line segment; in other words, the lineal element is a miniature tangent line at that point.



(a) lineal element at a point



(b) lineal element is tangent to solution curve that passes through the point

FIGURE 2.1.1 A solution curve is tangent to lineal element at (2, 3)

Direction Field If we systematically evaluate f over a rectangular grid of points in the xy-plane and draw a line element at each point (x, y) of the grid with slope $f(x, y)$, then the collection of all these line elements is called a **direction fiel** or a **slope fiel** of the differential equation $dy/dx = f(x, y)$. Visually, the direction field suggests the appearance or shape of a family of solution curves of the differential equation, and consequently, it may be possible to see at a glance certain qualitative aspects of the solutions—regions in the plane, for example, in which a

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

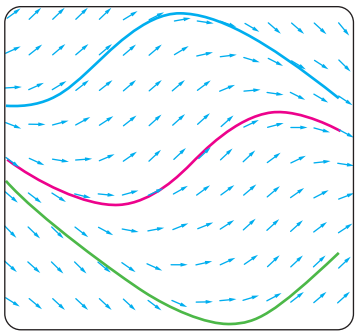
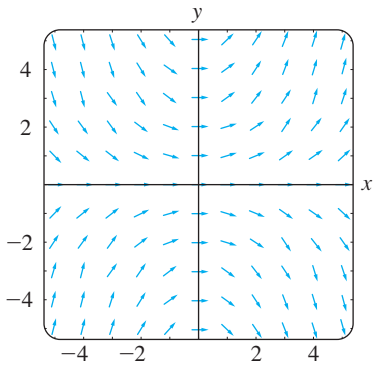
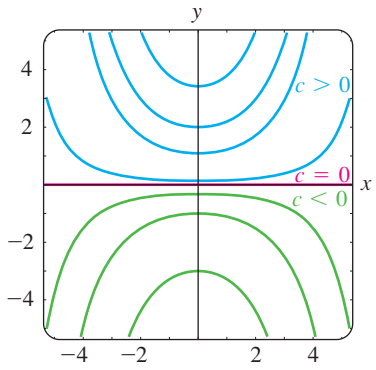


FIGURE 2.1.2 Solution curves following flow of a direction field



(a) direction fiel for $dy/dx = 0.2xy$



(b) some solution curves in the family $y = ce^{0.1x^2}$

FIGURE 2.1.3 Direction field and solution curves in Example 1

solution exhibits an unusual behavior. A single solution curve that passes through a direction field must follow the flow pattern of the field; it is tangent to a lineal element when it intersects a point in the grid. Figure 2.1.2 shows a computer-generated direction field of the differential equation $dy/dx = \sin(x + y)$ over a region of the xy-plane. Note how the three solution curves shown in color follow the flow of the field.

EXAMPLE 1 Direction Field

The direction field for the differential equation $dy/dx = 0.2xy$ shown in Figure 2.1.3(a) was obtained by using computer software in which a 5×5 grid of points (mh, nh), m and n integers, was defined by letting $-5 \le m \le 5$, $-5 \le n \le 5$, and $h = 1$. Notice in Figure 2.1.3(a) that at any point along the x-axis ($y = 0$) and the y-axis ($x = 0$), the slopes are $f(x, 0) = 0$ and $f(0, y) = 0$, respectively, so the lineal elements are horizontal. Moreover, observe in the first quadrant that for a fixed value of x the values of $f(x, y) = 0.2xy$ increase as y increases; similarly, for a fixed y the values of $f(x, y) = 0.2xy$ increase as x increases. This means that as both x and y increase, the lineal elements almost become vertical and have positive slope ($f(x, y) = 0.2xy > 0$ for $x > 0$, $y > 0$). In the second quadrant, $|f(x, y)|$ increases as $|x|$ and y increase, so the lineal elements again become almost vertical but this time have negative slope ($f(x, y) = 0.2xy$ 0 for x 0, $y > 0$). Reading from left to right, imagine a solution curve that starts at a point in the second quadrant, moves steeply downward, becomes flat as it passes through the y-axis, and then, as it enters the first quadrant, moves steeply upward—in other words, its shape would be concave upward and similar to a horseshoe. From this it could be surmised that $y \to \infty$ as $x \to \pm\infty$. Now in the third and fourth quadrants, since $f(x, y) = 0.2xy > 0$ and $f(x, y) = 0.2xy$ 0, respectively, the situation is reversed: A solution curve increases and then decreases as we move from left to right. We saw in (1) of Section 1.1 that $y = e^{0.1x^2}$ is an explicit solution of the differential equation $dy/dx = 0.2xy$; you should verify that a one-parameter family of solutions of the same equation is given by $y = ce^{0.1x^2}$. For purposes of comparison with Figure 2.1.3(a) some representative graphs of members of this family are shown in Figure 2.1.3(b).

EXAMPLE 2 Direction Field

Use a direction field to sketch an approximate solution curve for the initial-value problem $dy/dx = \sin y$, $y(0) = -\frac{3}{2}$.

SOLUTION Before proceeding, recall that from the continuity of $f(x, y) = \sin y$ and $\partial f/\partial y = \cos y$, Theorem 1.2.1 guarantees the existence of a unique solution curve passing through any specified point (x_0, y_0) in the plane. Now we set our computer software again for a 5×5 rectangular region and specify (because of the initial condition) points in that region with vertical and horizontal separation of $\frac{1}{2}$ unit—that is, at points (mh, nh), $h = \frac{1}{2}$, m and n integers such that $-10 \le m \le 10$, $-10 \le n \le 10$. The result is shown in Figure 2.1.4. Because the right-hand side of $dy/dx = \sin y$ is 0 at $y = 0$, and at $y = -\pi$, the lineal elements are horizontal at all points whose second coordinates are $y = 0$ or $y = -\pi$. It makes sense then that a solution curve passing through the initial point $(0, -\frac{3}{2})$ has the shape shown in the figure.

Increasing/Decreasing Interpretation of the derivative dy/dx as a function that gives slope plays the key role in the construction of a direction field. Another telling property of the first derivative will be used next, namely, if $dy/dx > 0$ (or dy/dx 0) for all x in an interval I, then a differentiable function $y = y(x)$ is increasing (or decreasing) on I.

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

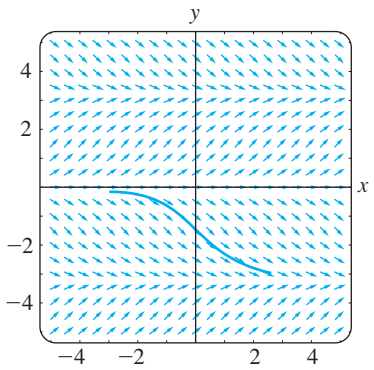


FIGURE 2.1.4 Direction field in Example 2 on page 37

REMARKS

Sketching a direction field by hand is straightforward but time consuming; it is probably one of those tasks about which an argument can be made for doing it once or twice in a lifetime, but it is overall most efficiently carried out by means of computer software. Before calculators, PCs, and software the **method of isoclines** was used to facilitate sketching a direction field by hand. For the DE $dy/dx = f(x, y)$, any member of the family of curves $f(x, y) = c$, c a constant, is called an **isocline.** Lineal elements drawn through points on a specific isocline, say, $f(x, y) = c_1$ all have the same slope c_1. In Problem 15 in Exercises 2.1 you have your two opportunities to sketch a direction field by hand.

2.1.2 AUTONOMOUS FIRST-ORDER DEs

Autonomous First-Order DEs In Section 1.1 we divided the class of ordinary differential equations into two types: linear and nonlinear. We now consider briefly another kind of classification of ordinary differential equations, a classification that is of particular importance in the qualitative investigation of differential equations. An ordinary differential equation in which the independent variable does not appear explicitly is said to be **autonomous.** If the symbol x denotes the independent variable, then an autonomous first-order differential equation can be written as $f(y, y') = 0$ or in normal form as

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = f(y). \tag{2}$$

We shall assume throughout that the function f in (2) and its derivative f' are continuous functions of y on some interval I. The first-order equations

$$\underset{\downarrow}{\overset{f(y)}{}} \qquad \underset{\downarrow}{\overset{f(x,\,y)}{}}$$
$$\frac{dy}{dx} = 1 + y^2 \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{dy}{dx} = 0.2xy$$

are autonomous and nonautonomous, respectively.

Many differential equations encountered in applications or equations that are models of physical laws that do not change over time are autonomous. As we have already seen in Section 1.3, in an applied context, symbols other than y and x are routinely used to represent the dependent and independent variables. For example, if t represents time then inspection of

$$\frac{dA}{dt} = kA, \qquad \frac{dx}{dt} = kx(n + 1 - x), \qquad \frac{dT}{dt} = k(T - T_m), \qquad \frac{dA}{dt} = 6 - \frac{1}{100}A,$$

where k, n, and T_m are constants, shows that each equation is time independent. Indeed, *all* of the first-order differential equations introduced in Section 1.3 are time independent and so are autonomous.

Critical Points The zeros of the function f in (2) are of special importance. We say that a real number c is a **critical point** of the autonomous differential equation (2) if it is a zero of f—that is, $f(c) = 0$. A critical point is also called an **equilibrium point** or **stationary point.** Now observe that if we substitute the constant function $y(x) = c$ into (2), then both sides of the equation are zero. This means:

If c is a critical point of (2), then $y(x) = c$ is a constant solution of the autonomous differential equation.

A constant solution $y(x) = c$ of (2) is called an **equilibrium solution;** equilibria are the *only* constant solutions of (2).

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

As was already mentioned, we can tell when a nonconstant solution $y = y(x)$ of (2) is increasing or decreasing by determining the algebraic sign of the derivative dy/dx; in the case of (2) we do this by identifying intervals on the y-axis over which the function $f(y)$ is positive or negative.

EXAMPLE 3 An Autonomous DE

The differential equation

$$\frac{dP}{dt} = P(a - bP),$$

where a and b are positive constants, has the normal form $dP/dt = f(P)$, which is (2) with t and P playing the parts of x and y, respectively, and hence is autonomous. From $f(P) = P(a - bP) = 0$ we see that 0 and a/b are critical points of the equation, so the equilibrium solutions are $P(t) = 0$ and $P(t) = a/b$. By putting the critical points on a vertical line, we divide the line into three intervals defined by $-\infty$ P 0, 0 P a/b, a/b $P < \infty$. The arrows on the line shown in Figure 2.1.5 indicate the algebraic sign of $f(P) = P(a - bP)$ on these intervals and whether a nonconstant solution $P(t)$ is increasing or decreasing on an interval. The following table explains the figure.

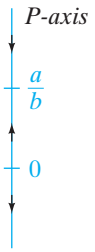
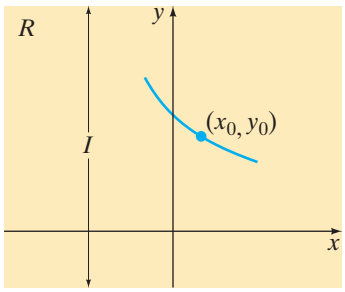


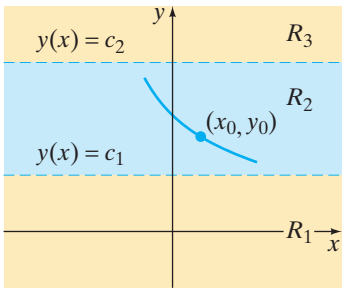
FIGURE 2.1.5 Phase portrait of DE in Example 3

Interval	Sign of $f(P)$	$P(t)$	Arrow
$(-\infty, 0)$	minus	decreasing	points down
$(0, a/b)$	plus	increasing	points up
$(a/b, \infty)$	minus	decreasing	points down

Figure 2.1.5 is called a **one-dimensional phase portrait,** or simply **phase portrait,** of the differential equation $dP/dt = P(a - bP)$. The vertical line is called a **phase line.**



(a) region R



(b) subregions R_1, R_2, and R_3 of R

FIGURE 2.1.6 Lines $y(x) = c_1$ and $y(x) = c_2$ partition R into three horizontal subregions

Solution Curves Without solving an autonomous differential equation, we can usually say a great deal about its solution curves. Since the function f in (2) is independent of the variable x, we may consider f defined for $-\infty$ $x < \infty$ or for $0 \le x < \infty$. Also, since f and its derivative f' are continuous functions of y on some interval I of the y-axis, the fundamental results of Theorem 1.2.1 hold in some horizontal strip or region R in the xy-plane corresponding to I, and so through any point (x_0, y_0) in R there passes only one solution curve of (2). See Figure 2.1.6(a). For the sake of discussion, let us suppose that (2) possesses exactly two critical points c_1 and c_2 and that c_1 c_2. The graphs of the equilibrium solutions $y(x) = c_1$ and $y(x) = c_2$ are horizontal lines, and these lines partition the region R into three subregions R_1, R_2, and R_3, as illustrated in Figure 2.1.6(b). Without proof here are some conclusions that we can draw about a nonconstant solution $y(x)$ of (2):

- If (x_0, y_0) is in a subregion R_i, $i = 1, 2, 3$, and $y(x)$ is a solution whose graph passes through this point, then $y(x)$ remains in the subregion R_i for all x. As illustrated in Figure 2.1.6(b), the solution $y(x)$ in R_2 is bounded below by c_1 and above by c_2, that is, c_1 $y(x)$ c_2 for all x. The solution curve stays within R_2 for all x because the graph of a nonconstant solution of (2) cannot cross the graph of either equilibrium solution $y(x) = c_1$ or $y(x) = c_2$. See Problem 33 in Exercises 2.1.
- By continuity of f we must then have either $f(y) > 0$ or $f(y)$ 0 for all x in a subregion R_i, $i = 1, 2, 3$. In other words, $f(y)$ cannot change signs in a subregion. See Problem 33 in Exercises 2.1.

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

- Since $dy/dx = f(y(x))$ is either positive or negative in a subregion R_i, $i = 1$, 2, 3, a solution $y(x)$ is strictly monotonic—that is, $y(x)$ is either increasing or decreasing in the subregion R_i. Therefore $y(x)$ cannot be oscillatory, nor can it have a relative extremum (maximum or minimum). See Problem 33 in Exercises 2.1.
- If $y(x)$ is *bounded above* by a critical point c_1 (as in subregion R_1 where $y(x)$ c_1 for all x), then the graph of $y(x)$ must approach the graph of the equilibrium solution $y(x) = c_1$ either as $x \to \infty$ or as $x \to -\infty$. If $y(x)$ is *bounded*—that is, bounded above and below by two consecutive critical points (as in subregion R_2 where c_1 $y(x)$ c_2 for all x)—then the graph of $y(x)$ must approach the graphs of the equilibrium solutions $y(x) = c_1$ and $y(x) = c_2$, one as $x \to \infty$ and the other as $x \to -\infty$. If $y(x)$ is *bounded below* by a critical point (as in subregion R_3 where c_2 $y(x)$ for all x), then the graph of $y(x)$ must approach the graph of the equilibrium solution $y(x) = c_2$ either as $x \to \infty$ or as $x \to -\infty$. See Problem 34 in Exercises 2.1.

With the foregoing facts in mind, let us reexamine the differential equation in Example 3.

EXAMPLE 4 Example 3 Revisited

The three intervals determined on the P-axis or phase line by the critical points 0 and a/b now correspond in the tP-plane to three subregions defined by:

$$R_1\colon -\infty < P < 0, \qquad R_2\colon 0 < P < a/b, \qquad \text{and} \qquad R_3\colon a/b < P < \infty,$$

where $-\infty$ $t < \infty$. The phase portrait in Figure 2.1.7 tells us that $P(t)$ is decreasing in R_1, increasing in R_2, and decreasing in R_3. If $P(0) = P_0$ is an initial value, then in R_1, R_2, and R_3 we have, respectively, the following:

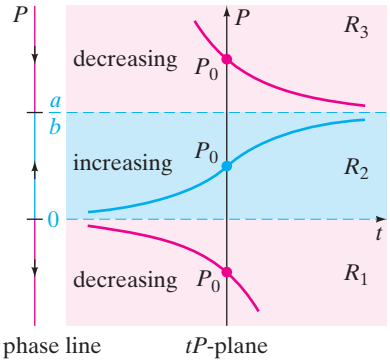


FIGURE 2.1.7 Phase portrait and solution curves in Example 4

(*i*) For P_0 0, $P(t)$ is bounded above. Since $P(t)$ is decreasing, $P(t)$ decreases without bound for increasing t, and so $P(t) \to 0$ as $t \to -\infty$. This means that the negative t-axis, the graph of the equilibrium solution $P(t) = 0$, is a horizontal asymptote for a solution curve.

(*ii*) For 0 P_0 a/b, $P(t)$ is bounded. Since $P(t)$ is increasing, $P(t) \to a/b$ as $t \to \infty$ and $P(t) \to 0$ as $t \to -\infty$. The graphs of the two equilibrium solutions, $P(t) = 0$ and $P(t) = a/b$, are horizontal lines that are horizontal asymptotes for any solution curve starting in this subregion.

(*iii*) For $P_0 > a/b$, $P(t)$ is bounded below. Since $P(t)$ is decreasing, $P(t) \to a/b$ as $t \to \infty$. The graph of the equilibrium solution $P(t) = a/b$ is a horizontal asymptote for a solution curve.

In Figure 2.1.7 the phase line is the P-axis in the tP-plane. For clarity the original phase line from Figure 2.1.5 is reproduced to the left of the plane in which the subregions R_1, R_2, and R_3 are shaded. The graphs of the equilibrium solutions $P(t) = a/b$ and $P(t) = 0$ (the t-axis) are shown in the figure as blue dashed lines; the solid graphs represent typical graphs of $P(t)$ illustrating the three cases just discussed.

In a subregion such as R_1 in Example 4, where $P(t)$ is decreasing and unbounded below, we must necessarily have $P(t) \to -\infty$. Do *not* interpret this last statement to mean $P(t) \to -\infty$ as $t \to \infty$; we could have $P(t) \to -\infty$ as $t \to T$, where $T > 0$ is a finite number that depends on the initial condition $P(t_0) = P_0$. Thinking in dynamic terms, $P(t)$ could "blow up" in finite time; thinking graphically, $P(t)$ could have a vertical asymptote at $t = T > 0$. A similar remark holds for the subregion R_3.

The differential equation $dy/dx = \sin y$ in Example 2 is autonomous and has an infinite number of critical points, since $\sin y = 0$ at $y = n\pi$, n an integer. Moreover, we now know that because the solution $y(x)$ that passes through $(0, -\frac{3}{2})$ is bounded

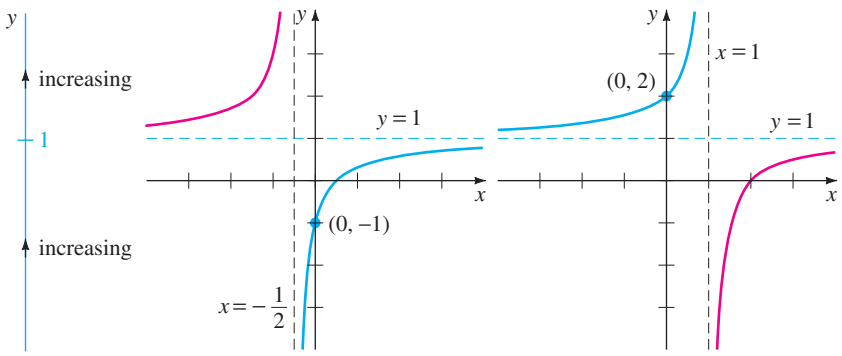
Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

above and below by two consecutive critical points ($-\pi$ $y(x)$ 0) and is decreasing (sin y 0 for $-\pi$ y 0), the graph of $y(x)$ must approach the graphs of the equilibrium solutions as horizontal asymptotes: $y(x) \to -\pi$ as $x \to \infty$ and $y(x) \to 0$ as $x \to -\infty$.

EXAMPLE 5 Solution Curves of an Autonomous DE

The autonomous equation $dy/dx = (y - 1)^2$ possesses the single critical point 1. From the phase portrait in Figure 2.1.8(a) we conclude that a solution $y(x)$ is an increasing function in the subregions defined by $-\infty$ y 1 and 1 $y < \infty$, where $-\infty$ $x < \infty$. For an initial condition $y(0) = y_0$ 1, a solution $y(x)$ is increasing and bounded above by 1, and so $y(x) \to 1$ as $x \to \infty$; for $y(0) = y_0 > 1$ a solution $y(x)$ is increasing and unbounded.

Now $y(x) = 1 - 1/(x + c)$ is a one-parameter family of solutions of the differential equation. (See Problem 4 in Exercises 2.2.) A given initial condition determines a value for c. For the initial conditions, say, $y(0) = -1$ 1 and $y(0) = 2 > 1$, we find, in turn, that $y(x) = 1 - 1/(x + \frac{1}{2})$, and $y(x) = 1 - 1/(x - 1)$. As shown in Figures 2.1.8(b) and 2.1.8(c), the graph of each of these rational functions possesses



(a) phase line **(b)** xy-plane $y(0) < 1$ **(c)** xy-plane $y(0) > 1$

FIGURE 2.1.8 Behavior of solutions near $y = 1$ in Example 5

a vertical asymptote. But bear in mind that the solutions of the IVPs

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = (y - 1)^2, \quad y(0) = -1 \qquad \text{and} \qquad \frac{dy}{dx} = (y - 1)^2, \quad y(0) = 2$$

are defined on special intervals. They are, respectively,

$$y(x) = 1 - \frac{1}{x + \frac{1}{2}}, \quad -\tfrac{1}{2} \quad x < \infty \qquad \text{and} \qquad y(x) = 1 - \frac{1}{x - 1}, \quad -\infty \quad x \quad 1.$$

The solution curves are the portions of the graphs in Figures 2.1.8(b) and 2.1.8(c) shown in blue. As predicted by the phase portrait, for the solution curve in Figure 2.1.8(b), $y(x) \to 1$ as $x \to \infty$; for the solution curve in Figure 2.1.8(c), $y(x) \to \infty$ as $x \to 1$ from the left.

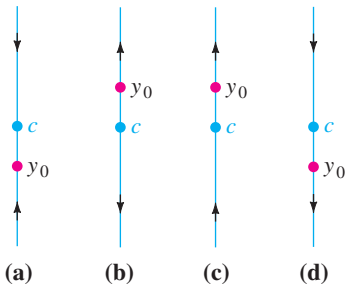


FIGURE 2.1.9 Critical point c is an attractor in (a), a repeller in (b), and semi-stable in (c) and (d).

Attractors and Repellers Suppose that $y(x)$ is a nonconstant solution of the autonomous differential equation given in (1) and that c is a critical point of the DE. There are basically three types of behavior that $y(x)$ can exhibit near c. In Figure 2.1.9 we have placed c on four vertical phase lines. When both arrowheads on either side of the dot labeled c point *toward* c, as in Figure 2.1.9(a), all solutions $y(x)$ of (1) that start from an initial point (x_0, y_0) sufficiently near c exhibit the asymptotic behavior $\lim_{x \to \infty} y(x) = c$. For this reason the critical point c is said to be

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

asymptotically stable. Using a physical analogy, a solution that starts near c is like a charged particle that, over time, is drawn to a particle of opposite charge, and so c is also referred to as an **attractor.** When both arrowheads on either side of the dot labeled c point *away* from c, as in Figure 2.1.9(b), all solutions $y(x)$ of (1) that start from an initial point (x_0, y_0) move away from c as x increases. In this case the critical point c is said to be **unstable.** An unstable critical point is also called a **repeller,** for obvious reasons. The critical point c illustrated in Figures 2.1.9(c) and 2.1.9(d) is neither an attractor nor a repeller. But since c exhibits characteristics of both an attractor and a repeller—that is, a solution starting from an initial point (x_0, y_0) sufficiently near c is attracted to c from one side and repelled from the other side—we say that the critical point c is **semi-stable.** In Example 3 the critical point a/b is asymptotically stable (an attractor) and the critical point 0 is unstable (a repeller). The critical point 1 in Example 5 is semi-stable.

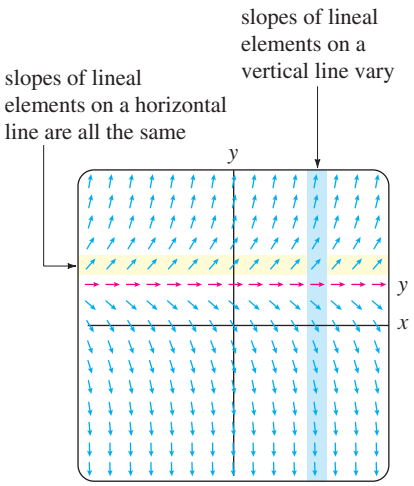


FIGURE 2.1.10 Direction field for an autonomous DE

Autonomous DEs and Direction Fields If a first-order differential equation is autonomous, then we see from the right-hand side of its normal form $dy/dx = f(y)$ that slopes of lineal elements through points in the rectangular grid used to construct a direction field for the DE depend solely on the y-coordinate of the points. Put another way, lineal elements passing through points on any *horizontal* line must all have the same slope and therefore are parallel; slopes of lineal elements along any *vertical* line will, of course, vary. These facts are apparent from inspection of the horizontal yellow strip and vertical blue strip in Figure 2.1.10. The figure exhibits a direction field for the autonomous equation $dy/dx = 2(y - 1)$. The red lineal elements in Figure 2.1.10 have zero slope because they lie along the graph of the equilibrium solution $y = 1$.

Translation Property You may recall from precalculus mathematics that the graph of a function $y = f(x - k)$, where k is a constant, is the graph of $y = f(x)$ rigidly translated or shifted horizontally along the x-axis by an amount $|k|$; the translation is to the right if $k > 0$ and to the left if k 0. It turns out that under the conditions stipulated for (2), solution curves of an autonomous first-order DE are related by the concept of translation. To see this, let's consider the differential equation $dy/dx = y(3 - y)$, which is a special case of the autonomous equation considered in Examples 3 and 4. Because $y = 0$ and $y = 3$ are equilibrium solutions of the DE, their graphs divide the xy-plane into three subregions R_1, R_2, and R_3:

$$R_1: -\infty \quad y \quad 0, \quad R_2: 0 \quad y \quad 3, \quad \text{and} \quad R_3: 3 \quad y \quad \infty.$$

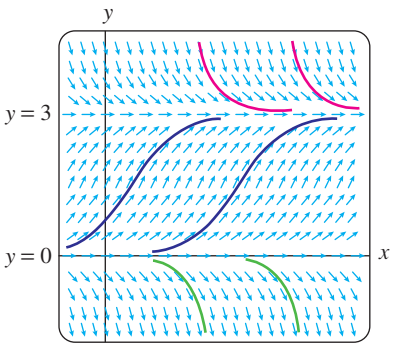


FIGURE 2.1.11 Translated solution curves of an autonomous DE

In Figure 2.1.11 we have superimposed on a direction field of the DE six solutions curves. The figure illustrates that all solution curves of the same color, that is, solution curves lying within a particular subregion R_i, all look alike. This is no coincidence but is a natural consequence of the fact that lineal elements passing through points on any horizontal line are parallel. That said, the following **translation property** of an automonous DE should make sense:

> *If $y(x)$ is a solution of an autonomous differ ential equation $dy/dx = f(y)$, then $y_1(x) = y(x - k)$, k a constant, is also a solution.*

Thus, if $y(x)$ is a solution of the initial-value problem $dy/dx = f(y)$, $y(0) = y_0$, then $y_1(x) = y(x - x_0)$ is a solution of the IVP $dy/dx = f(y)$, $y(x_0) = y_0$. For example, it is easy to verify that $y(x) = e^x$, $-\infty$ $x < \infty$, is a solution of the IVP $dy/dx = y$, $y(0) = 1$ and so a solution $y_1(x)$ of, say, $dy/dx = y$, $y(5) = 1$ is $y(x) = e^x$ translated 5 units to the right:

$$y_1(x) = y(x - 5) = e^{x-5}, \quad -\infty \quad x < \infty.$$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

EXERCISES 2.1

Answers to selected odd-numbered problems begin on page ANS-1.

2.1.1 DIRECTION FIELDS

In Problems 1–4 reproduce the given computer-generated direction field. Then sketch, by hand, an approximate solution curve that passes through each of the indicated points. Use different colored pencils for each solution curve.

1. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = x^2 - y^2$

(a) $y(-2) = 1$ **(b)** $y(3) = 0$

(c) $y(0) = 2$ **(d)** $y(0) = 0$

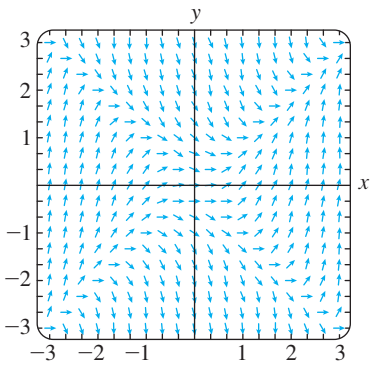


FIGURE 2.1.12 Direction field for Problem 1

2. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = e^{-0.01xy^2}$

(a) $y(-6) = 0$ **(b)** $y(0) = 1$

(c) $y(0) = -4$ **(d)** $y(8) = -4$

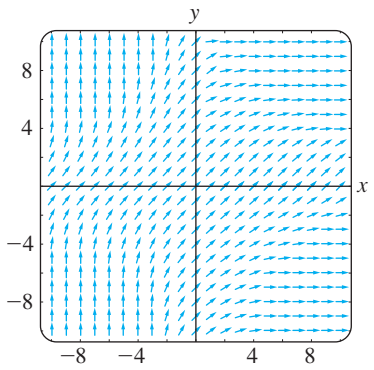


FIGURE 2.1.13 Direction field for Problem 2

3. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 1 - xy$

(a) $y(0) = 0$ **(b)** $y(-1) = 0$

(c) $y(2) = 2$ **(d)** $y(0) = -4$

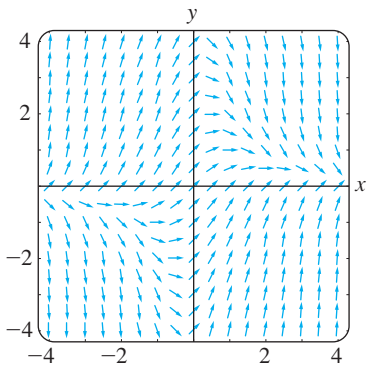


FIGURE 2.1.14 Direction field for Problem 3

4. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = (\sin x)\cos y$

(a) $y(0) = 1$ **(b)** $y(1) = 0$

(c) $y(3) = 3$ **(d)** $y(0) = -\frac{5}{2}$

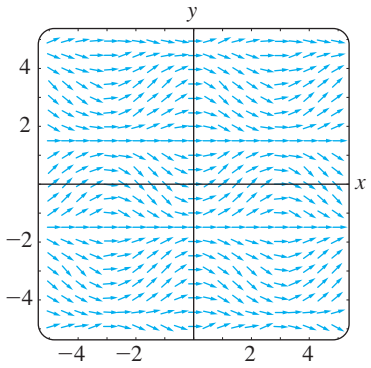


FIGURE 2.1.15 Direction field for Problem 4

In Problems 5–12 use computer software to obtain a direction field for the given differential equation. By hand, sketch an approximate solution curve passing through each of the given points.

5. $y' = x$

(a) $y(0) = 0$

(b) $y(0) = -3$

6. $y' = x + y$

(a) $y(-2) = 2$

(b) $y(1) = -3$

7. $y\dfrac{dy}{dx} = -x$

(a) $y(1) = 1$

(b) $y(0) = 4$

8. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{1}{y}$

(a) $y(0) = 1$

(b) $y(-2) = -1$

9. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 0.2x^2 + y$

(a) $y(0) = \frac{1}{2}$

(b) $y(2) = -1$

10. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = xe^y$

(a) $y(0) = -2$

(b) $y(1) = 2.5$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

11. $y' = y - \cos\frac{1}{2}x$

(a) $y(2) = 2$

(b) $y(-1) = 0$

12. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 1 - \dfrac{y}{x}$

(a) $y\left(-\frac{1}{2}\right) = 2$

(b) $y\left(\frac{3}{2}\right) = 0$

In Problems 13 and 14 the given figure represents the graph of $f(y)$ and $f(x)$, respectively. By hand, sketch a direction field over an appropriate grid for $dy/dx = f(y)$ (Problem 13) and then for $dy/dx = f(x)$ (Problem 14).

13.

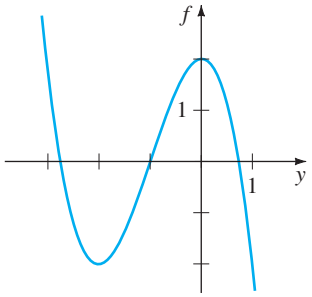


FIGURE 2.1.16 Graph for Problem 13

14.

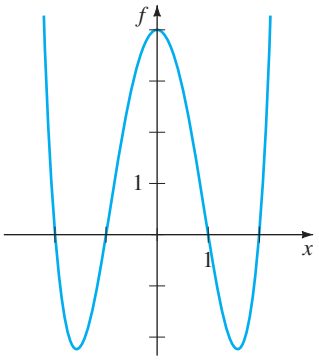


FIGURE 2.1.17 Graph for Problem 14

15. In parts (a) and (b) sketch **isoclines** $f(x, y) = c$ (see the *Remarks* on page 38) for the given differential equation using the indicated values of c. Construct a direction field over a grid by carefully drawing lineal elements with the appropriate slope at chosen points on each isocline. In each case, use this rough direction field to sketch an approximate solution curve for the IVP consisting of the DE and the initial condition $y(0) = 1$.

(a) $dy/dx = x + y$; c an integer satisfying $-5 \le c \le 5$

(b) $dy/dx = x^2 + y^2$; $c = \frac{1}{4}, c = 1, c = \frac{9}{4}, c = 4$

Discussion Problems

16. **(a)** Consider the direction field of the differential equation $dy/dx = x(y - 4)^2 - 2$, but do not use technology to obtain it. Describe the slopes of the lineal elements on the lines $x = 0, y = 3, y = 4$, and $y = 5$.

(b) Consider the IVP $dy/dx = x(y - 4)^2 - 2, y(0) = y_0$, where y_0 4. Can a solution $y(x) \to \infty$ as $x \to \infty$? Based on the information in part (a), discuss.

17. For a first-order DE $dy/dx = f(x, y)$ a curve in the plane defined by $f(x, y) = 0$ is called a **nullcline** of the equation, since a lineal element at a point on the curve has zero slope. Use computer software to obtain a direction field over a rectangular grid of points for $dy/dx = x^2 - 2y$, and then superimpose the graph of the nullcline $y = \frac{1}{2}x^2$ over the direction field. Discuss the behavior of solution curves in regions of the plane defined by y $\frac{1}{2}x^2$ and by $y > \frac{1}{2}x^2$. Sketch some approximate solution curves. Try to generalize your observations.

18. **(a)** Identify the nullclines (see Problem 17) in Problems 1, 3, and 4. With a colored pencil, circle any lineal elements in Figures 2.1.12, 2.1.14, and 2.1.15 that you think may be a lineal element at a point on a nullcline.

(b) What are the nullclines of an autonomous first-order DE?

2.1.2 AUTONOMOUS FIRST-ORDER DEs

19. Consider the autonomous first-order differential equation $dy/dx = y - y^3$ and the initial condition $y(0) = y_0$. By hand, sketch the graph of a typical solution $y(x)$ when y_0 has the given values.

(a) $y_0 > 1$ **(b)** 0 y_0 1

(c) -1 y_0 0 **(d)** $y_0 < -1$

20. Consider the autonomous first-order differential equation $dy/dx = y^2 - y^4$ and the initial condition $y(0) = y_0$. By hand, sketch the graph of a typical solution $y(x)$ when y_0 has the given values.

(a) $y_0 > 1$ **(b)** 0 y_0 1

(c) -1 y_0 0 **(d)** $y_0 < -1$

In Problems 21–28 find the critical points and phase portrait of the given autonomous first-order differential equation. Classify each critical point as asymptotically stable, unstable, or semi-stable. By hand, sketch typical solution curves in the regions in the xy-plane determined by the graphs of the equilibrium solutions.

21. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = y^2 - 3y$

22. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = y^2 - y^3$

23. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = (y - 2)^4$

24. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 10 + 3y - y^2$

25. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = y^2(4 - y^2)$

26. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = y(2 - y)(4 - y)$

27. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = y \ln(y + 2)$

28. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{ye^y - 9y}{e^y}$

In Problems 29 and 30 consider the autonomous differential equation $dy/dx = f(y)$, where the graph of f is given. Use the graph to locate the critical points of each differential

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

equation. Sketch a phase portrait of each differential equation. By hand, sketch typical solution curves in the subregions in the xy-plane determined by the graphs of the equilibrium solutions.

29.

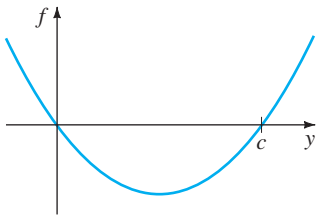


FIGURE 2.1.18 Graph for Problem 29

30.

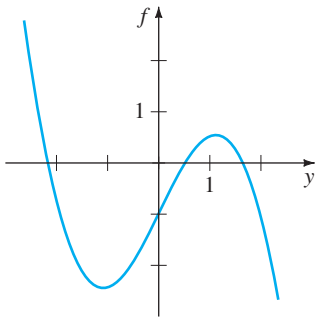


FIGURE 2.1.19 Graph for Problem 30

Discussion Problems

31. Consider the autonomous DE $dy/dx = (2/\pi)y - \sin y$. Determine the critical points of the equation. Discuss a way of obtaining a phase portrait of the equation. Classify the critical points as asymptotically stable, unstable, or semi-stable.

32. A critical point c of an autonomous first-order DE is said to be **isolated** if there exists some open interval that contains c but no other critical point. Can there exist an autonomous DE of the form given in (2) for which *every* critical point is nonisolated? Discuss; do not think profound thoughts.

33. Suppose that $y(x)$ is a nonconstant solution of the autonomous equation $dy/dx = f(y)$ and that c is a critical point of the DE. Discuss: Why can't the graph of $y(x)$ cross the graph of the equilibrium solution $y = c$? Why can't $f(y)$ change signs in one of the subregions discussed on page 39? Why can't $y(x)$ be oscillatory or have a relative extremum (maximum or minimum)?

34. Suppose that $y(x)$ is a solution of the autonomous equation $dy/dx = f(y)$ and is bounded above and below by two consecutive critical points c_1 c_2, as in subregion R_2 of Figure 2.1.6(b). If $f(y) > 0$ in the region, then $\lim_{x\to\infty} y(x) = c_2$. Discuss why there cannot exist a number L c_2 such that $\lim_{x\to\infty} y(x) = L$. As part of your discussion, consider what happens to $y'(x)$ as $x \to \infty$.

35. Using the autonomous equation (2), discuss how it is possible to obtain information about the location of points of inflection of a solution curve.

36. Consider the autonomous DE $dy/dx = y^2 - y - 6$. Use your ideas from Problem 35 to find intervals on the y-axis for which solution curves are concave up and intervals for which solution curves are concave down. Discuss why *each* solution curve of an initial-value problem of the form $dy/dx = y^2 - y - 6$, $y(0) = y_0$, where -2 y_0 3, has a point of inflection with the same y-coordinate. What is that y-coordinate? Carefully sketch the solution curve for which $y(0) = -1$. Repeat for $y(2) = 2$.

37. Suppose the autonomous DE in (2) has no critical points. Discuss the behavior of the solutions.

Mathematical Models

38. Population Model The differential equation in Example 3 is a well-known population model. Suppose the DE is changed to

$$\frac{dP}{dt} = P(aP - b),$$

where a and b are positive constants. Discuss what happens to the population P as time t increases.

39. Population Model Another population model is given by

$$\frac{dP}{dt} = kP - h,$$

where h and k are positive constants. For what initial values $P(0) = P_0$ does this model predict that the population will go extinct?

40. Terminal Velocity In Section 1.3 we saw that the autonomous differential equation

$$m\frac{dv}{dt} = mg - kv,$$

where k is a positive constant and g is the acceleration due to gravity, is a model for the velocity v of a body of mass m that is falling under the influence of gravity. Because the term $-kv$ represents air resistance, the velocity of a body falling from a great height does not increase without bound as time t increases. Use a phase portrait of the differential equation to find the limiting, or terminal, velocity of the body. Explain your reasoning.

41. Suppose the model in Problem 40 is modified so that air resistance is proportional to v^2, that is,

$$m\frac{dv}{dt} = mg - kv^2.$$

See Problem 17 in Exercises 1.3. Use a phase portrait to find the terminal velocity of the body. Explain your reasoning.

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

42. Chemical Reactions When certain kinds of chemicals are combined, the rate at which the new compound is formed is modeled by the autonomous differential equation

$$\frac{dX}{dt} = k(\alpha - X)(\beta - X),$$

where $k > 0$ is a constant of proportionality and $\beta > \alpha > 0$. Here $X(t)$ denotes the number of grams of the new compound formed in time t.

(a) Use a phase portrait of the differential equation to predict the behavior of $X(t)$ as $t \to \infty$.

(b) Consider the case when $\alpha = \beta$. Use a phase portrait of the differential equation to predict the behavior of $X(t)$ as $t \to \infty$ when $X(0)$ α. When $X(0) > \alpha$.

(c) Verify that an explicit solution of the DE in the case when $k = 1$ and $\alpha = \beta$ is $X(t) = \alpha - 1/(t + c)$. Find a solution that satisfies $X(0) = \alpha/2$. Then find a solution that satisfies $X(0) = 2\alpha$. Graph these two solutions. Does the behavior of the solutions as $t \to \infty$ agree with your answers to part (b)?

2.2 SEPARABLE EQUATIONS

REVIEW MATERIAL

- Basic integration formulas (See inside front cover)
- Techniques of integration: integration by parts and partial fraction decomposition
- See also the *Student Resource Manual.*

INTRODUCTION We begin our study of how to solve differential equations with the simplest of all differential equations: first-order equations with separable variables. Because the method in this section and many techniques for solving differential equations involve integration, you are urged to refresh your memory on important formulas (such as $\int du/u$) and techniques (such as integration by parts) by consulting a calculus text.

Solution by Integration Consider the first-order differential equation $dy/dx = f(x, y)$. When f does not depend on the variable y, that is, $f(x, y) = g(x)$, the differential equation

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = g(x) \tag{1}$$

can be solved by integration. If $g(x)$ is a continuous function, then integrating both sides of (1) gives $y = \int g(x)\,dx = G(x) + c$, where $G(x)$ is an antiderivative (indefinite integral) of $g(x)$. For example, if $dy/dx = 1 + e^{2x}$, then its solution is $y = \int (1 + e^{2x})\,dx$ or $y = x + \frac{1}{2}e^{2x} + c$.

A Definitio Equation (1), as well as its method of solution, is just a special case when the function f in the normal form $dy/dx = f(x, y)$ can be factored into a function of x times a function of y.

DEFINITION 2.2.1 Separable Equation

A first-order differential equation of the form

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = g(x)h(y)$$

is said to be **separable** or to have **separable variables.**

For example, the equations

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = y^2xe^{3x+4y} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{dy}{dx} = y + \sin x$$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

are separable and nonseparable, respectively. In the first equation we can factor $f(x, y) = y^2xe^{3x+4y}$ as

$$f(x, y) = y^2xe^{3x+4y} = \underset{\downarrow\ g(x)}{(xe^{3x})}\underset{\downarrow\ h(y)}{(y^2e^{4y})},$$

but in the second equation there is no way of expressing $y + \sin x$ as a product of a function of x times a function of y.

Observe that by dividing by the function $h(y)$, we can write a separable equation $dy/dx = g(x)h(y)$ as

$$p(y)\frac{dy}{dx} = g(x), \tag{2}$$

where, for convenience, we have denoted $1/h(y)$ by $p(y)$. From this last form we can see immediately that (2) reduces to (1) when $h(y) = 1$.

Now if $y = \phi(x)$ represents a solution of (2), we must have $p(\phi(x))\phi'(x) = g(x)$, and therefore

$$\int p(\phi(x))\phi'(x)\,dx = \int g(x)\,dx. \tag{3}$$

But $dy = \phi'(x)\,dx$, and so (3) is the same as

$$\int p(y)\,dy = \int g(x)\,dx \qquad \text{or} \qquad H(y) = G(x) + c, \tag{4}$$

where $H(y)$ and $G(x)$ are antiderivatives of $p(y) = 1/h(y)$ and $g(x)$, respectively.

Method of Solution Equation (4) indicates the procedure for solving separable equations. A one-parameter family of solutions, usually given implicitly, is obtained by integrating both sides of $p(y)\,dy = g(x)\,dx$.

Note There is no need to use two constants in the integration of a separable equation, because if we write $H(y) + c_1 = G(x) + c_2$, then the difference $c_2 - c_1$ can be replaced by a single constant c, as in (4). In many instances throughout the chapters that follow, we will relabel constants in a manner convenient to a given equation. For example, multiples of constants or combinations of constants can sometimes be replaced by a single constant.

EXAMPLE 1 Solving a Separable DE

Solve $(1 + x)\,dy - y\,dx = 0$.

SOLUTION Dividing by $(1 + x)y$, we can write $dy/y = dx/(1 + x)$, from which it follows that

$$\begin{aligned}
\int \frac{dy}{y} &= \int \frac{dx}{1+x} \\
\ln|y| &= \ln|1 + x| + c_1 \\
y &= e^{\ln|1+x|+c_1} = e^{\ln|1+x|} \cdot e^{c_1} && \leftarrow \text{laws of exponents} \\
&= |1 + x|\,e^{c_1} \\
&= \pm e^{c_1}(1 + x). && \leftarrow \begin{cases} |1 + x| = 1 + x, & x \ge -1 \\ |1 + x| = -(1 + x), & x < -1 \end{cases}
\end{aligned}$$

Relabeling $\pm e^{c_1}$ as c then gives $y = c(1 + x)$.

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

ALTERNATIVE SOLUTION Because each integral results in a logarithm, a judicious choice for the constant of integration is $\ln|c|$ rather than c. Rewriting the second line of the solution as $\ln|y| = \ln|1 + x| + \ln|c|$ enables us to combine the terms on the right-hand side by the properties of logarithms. From $\ln|y| = \ln|c(1 + x)|$ we immediately get $y = c(1 + x)$. Even if the indefinite integrals are not *all* logarithms, it may still be advantageous to use $\ln|c|$. However, no firm rule can be given.

In Section 1.1 we saw that a solution curve may be only a segment or an arc of the graph of an implicit solution $G(x, y) = 0$.

EXAMPLE 2 Solution Curve

Solve the initial-value problem $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = -\dfrac{x}{y}, \quad y(4) = -3.$

SOLUTION Rewriting the equation as $y\,dy = -x\,dx$, we get

$$\int y\,dy = -\int x\,dx \qquad \text{and} \qquad \frac{y^2}{2} = -\frac{x^2}{2} + c_1.$$

We can write the result of the integration as $x^2 + y^2 = c^2$ by replacing the constant $2c_1$ by c^2. This solution of the differential equation represents a family of concentric circles centered at the origin.

Now when $x = 4$, $y = -3$, so $16 + 9 = 25 = c^2$. Thus the initial-value problem determines the circle $x^2 + y^2 = 25$ with radius 5. Because of its simplicity we can solve this implicit solution for an explicit solution that satisfies the initial condition. We saw this solution as $y = \phi_2(x)$ or $y = -\sqrt{25 - x^2}, -5 \quad x \quad 5$ in Example 3 of Section 1.1. A solution curve is the graph of a differentiable function. In this case the solution curve is the lower semicircle, shown in dark blue in Figure 2.2.1 containing the point $(4, -3)$.

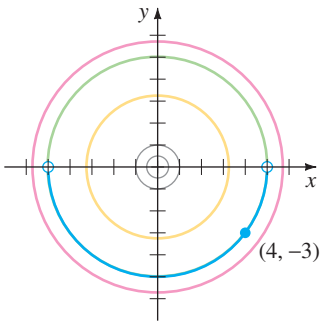


FIGURE 2.2.1 Solution curve for the IVP in Example 2

Losing a Solution Some care should be exercised in separating variables, since the variable divisors could be zero at a point. Specifically, if r is a zero of the function $h(y)$, then substituting $y = r$ into $dy/dx = g(x)h(y)$ makes both sides zero; in other words, $y = r$ is a constant solution of the differential equation. But after variables are separated, the left-hand side of $\dfrac{dy}{h(y)} = g(x)\,dx$ is undefined at r. As a consequence, $y = r$ might not show up in the family of solutions that are obtained after integration and simplification. Recall that such a solution is called a singular solution.

EXAMPLE 3 Losing a Solution

Solve $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = y^2 - 4.$

SOLUTION We put the equation in the form

$$\frac{dy}{y^2 - 4} = dx \qquad \text{or} \qquad \left[\frac{\frac{1}{4}}{y - 2} - \frac{\frac{1}{4}}{y + 2}\right] dy = dx. \tag{5}$$

The second equation in (5) is the result of using partial fractions on the left-hand side of the first equation. Integrating and using the laws of logarithms gives

$$\frac{1}{4}\ln|y - 2| - \frac{1}{4}\ln|y + 2| = x + c_1$$

$$\ln\left|\frac{y - 2}{y + 2}\right| = 4x + c_2 \qquad \text{or} \qquad \frac{y - 2}{y + 2} = \pm e^{4x + c_2}.$$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Ziyad Asaad

Here we have replaced $4c_1$ by c_2. Finally, after replacing $\pm e^{c_2}$ by c and solving the last equation for y, we get the one-parameter family of solutions

$$y = 2\frac{1 + ce^{4x}}{1 - ce^{4x}}. \tag{6}$$

Now if we factor the right-hand side of the differential equation as $dy/dx = (y - 2)(y + 2)$, we know from the discussion of critical points in Section 2.1 that $y = 2$ and $y = -2$ are two constant (equilibrium) solutions. The solution $y = 2$ is a member of the family of solutions defined by (6) corresponding to the value $c = 0$. However, $y = -2$ is a singular solution; it cannot be obtained from (6) for any choice of the parameter c. This latter solution was lost early on in the solution process. Inspection of (5) clearly indicates that we must preclude $y = \pm 2$ in these steps.

EXAMPLE 4 An Initial-Value Problem

Solve $(e^{2y} - y)\cos x \dfrac{dy}{dx} = e^y \sin 2x, \quad y(0) = 0.$

SOLUTION Dividing the equation by $e^y \cos x$ gives

$$\frac{e^{2y} - y}{e^y}\,dy = \frac{\sin 2x}{\cos x}\,dx.$$

Before integrating, we use termwise division on the left-hand side and the trigonometric identity $\sin 2x = 2 \sin x \cos x$ on the right-hand side. Then

integration by parts →
$$\int (e^y - ye^{-y})\,dy = 2\int \sin x\,dx$$

yields
$$e^y + ye^{-y} + e^{-y} = -2\cos x + c. \tag{7}$$

The initial condition $y = 0$ when $x = 0$ implies $c = 4$. Thus a solution of the initial-value problem is

$$e^y + ye^{-y} + e^{-y} = 4 - 2\cos x. \tag{8}$$

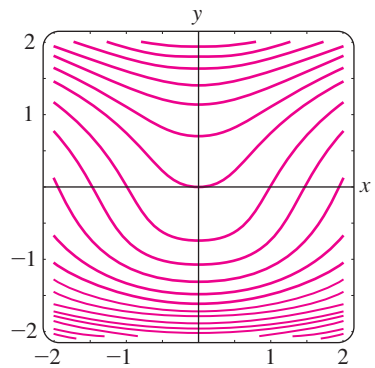


FIGURE 2.2.2 Level curves of $G(x, y) = e^y + ye^{-y} + e^{-y} + 2\cos x$

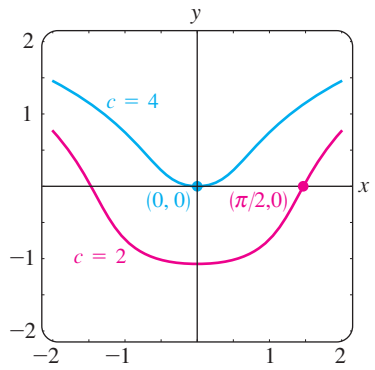


FIGURE 2.2.3 Level curves $c = 2$ and $c = 4$

Use of Computers The *Remarks* at the end of Section 1.1 mentioned that it may be difficult to use an implicit solution $G(x, y) = 0$ to find an explicit solution $y = \phi(x)$. Equation (8) shows that the task of solving for y in terms of x may present more problems than just the drudgery of symbol pushing—sometimes it simply cannot be done! Implicit solutions such as (8) are somewhat frustrating; neither the graph of the equation nor an interval over which a solution satisfying $y(0) = 0$ is defined is apparent. The problem of "seeing" what an implicit solution looks like can be overcome in some cases by means of technology. One way* of proceeding is to use the contour plot application of a computer algebra system (CAS). Recall from multivariate calculus that for a function of two variables $z = G(x, y)$ the *two-dimensional* curves defined by $G(x, y) = c$, where c is constant, are called the *level curves* of the function. With the aid of a CAS, some of the level curves of the function $G(x, y) = e^y + ye^{-y} + e^{-y} + 2\cos x$ have been reproduced in Figure 2.2.2. The family of solutions defined by (7) is the level curves $G(x, y) = c$. Figure 2.2.3 illustrates the level curve $G(x, y) = 4$, which is the particular solution (8), in blue color. The other curve in Figure 2.2.3 is the level curve $G(x, y) = 2$, which is the member of the family $G(x, y) = c$ that satisfies $y(\pi/2) = 0$.

If an initial condition leads to a particular solution by yielding a specific value of the parameter c in a family of solutions for a first-order differential equation, there is

*In Section 2.6 we will discuss several other ways of proceeding that are based on the concept of a numerical solver.

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

a natural inclination for most students (and instructors) to relax and be content. However, a solution of an initial-value problem might not be unique. We saw in Example 4 of Section 1.2 that the initial-value problem

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = xy^{1/2}, \quad y(0) = 0 \tag{9}$$

has at least two solutions, $y = 0$ and $y = \frac{1}{16}x^4$. We are now in a position to solve the equation. Separating variables and integrating $y^{-1/2}\,dy = x\,dx$ gives

$$2y^{1/2} = \frac{x^2}{2} + c_1 \qquad \text{or} \qquad y = \left(\frac{x^2}{4} + c\right)^2, \quad c \geq 0.$$

When $x = 0$, then $y = 0$, so necessarily, $c = 0$. Therefore $y = \frac{1}{16}x^4$. The trivial solution $y = 0$ was lost by dividing by $y^{1/2}$. In addition, the initial-value problem (9) possesses infinitely many more solutions, since for any choice of the parameter $a \geq 0$ the piecewise-defined function

$$y = \begin{cases} 0, & x < a \\ \frac{1}{16}(x^2 - a^2)^2, & x \geq a \end{cases}$$

satisfies both the differential equation and the initial condition. See Figure 2.2.4.

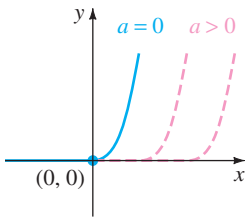


FIGURE 2.2.4 Piecewise-defined solutions of (9)

Solutions Defined by Integral If g is a function continuous on an open interval I containing a, then for every x in I,

$$\frac{d}{dx}\int_a^x g(t)\,dt = g(x).$$

You might recall that the foregoing result is one of the two forms of the fundamental theorem of calculus. In other words, $\int_a^x g(t)\,dt$ is an antiderivative of the function g. There are times when this form is convenient in solving DEs. For example, if g is continuous on an interval I containing x_0 and x, then a solution of the simple initial-value problem $dy/dx = g(x)$, $y(x_0) = y_0$, that is defined on I is given by

$$y(x) = y_0 + \int_{x_0}^x g(t)\,dt$$

You should verify that $y(x)$ defined in this manner satisfies the initial condition. Since an antiderivative of a continuous function g cannot always be expressed in terms of elementary functions, this might be the best we can do in obtaining an explicit solution of an IVP. The next example illustrates this idea.

EXAMPLE 5 An Initial-Value Problem

Solve $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = e^{-x^2}, \quad y(3) = 5.$

SOLUTION The function $g(x) = e^{-x^2}$ is continuous on $(-\infty, \infty)$, but its antiderivative is not an elementary function. Using t as dummy variable of integration, we can write

$$\int_3^x \frac{dy}{dt}\,dt = \int_3^x e^{-t^2}\,dt$$

$$y(t)\Big]_3^x = \int_3^x e^{-t^2}\,dt$$

$$y(x) - y(3) = \int_3^x e^{-t^2}\,dt$$

$$y(x) = y(3) + \int_3^x e^{-t^2}\,dt.$$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Using the initial condition $y(3) = 5$, we obtain the solution

$$y(x) = 5 + \int_3^x e^{-t^2}\,dt.$$

The procedure demonstrated in Example 5 works equally well on separable equations $dy/dx = g(x)f(y)$ where, say, $f(y)$ possesses an elementary antiderivative but $g(x)$ does not possess an elementary antiderivative. See Problems 29 and 30 in Exercises 2.2.

REMARKS

(*i*) As we have just seen in Example 5, some simple functions do not possess an antiderivative that is an elementary function. Integrals of these kinds of functions are called **nonelementary.** For example, $\int_3^x e^{-t^2}\,dt$ and $\int \sin x^2\,dx$ are nonelementary integrals. We will run into this concept again in Section 2.3.

(*ii*) In some of the preceding examples we saw that the constant in the one-parameter family of solutions for a first-order differential equation can be relabeled when convenient. Also, it can easily happen that two individuals solving the same equation correctly arrive at dissimilar expressions for their answers. For example, by separation of variables we can show that one-parameter families of solutions for the DE $(1 + y^2)\,dx + (1 + x^2)\,dy = 0$ are

$$\arctan x + \arctan y = c \qquad \text{or} \qquad \frac{x + y}{1 - xy} = c.$$

As you work your way through the next several sections, bear in mind that families of solutions may be equivalent in the sense that one family may be obtained from another by either relabeling the constant or applying algebra and trigonometry. See Problems 27 and 28 in Exercises 2.2.

EXERCISES 2.2

Answers to selected odd-numbered problems begin on page ANS-2.

In Problems 1–22 solve the given differential equation by separation of variables.

1. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \sin 5x$

2. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = (x + 1)^2$

3. $dx + e^{3x}dy = 0$

4. $dy - (y - 1)^2dx = 0$

5. $x\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 4y$

6. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} + 2xy^2 = 0$

7. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = e^{3x+2y}$

8. $e^x y\dfrac{dy}{dx} = e^{-y} + e^{-2x-y}$

9. $y \ln x \dfrac{dx}{dy} = \left(\dfrac{y + 1}{x}\right)^2$

10. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \left(\dfrac{2y + 3}{4x + 5}\right)^2$

11. $\csc y\,dx + \sec^2 x\,dy = 0$

12. $\sin 3x\,dx + 2y\cos^3 3x\,dy = 0$

13. $(e^y + 1)^2 e^{-y}\,dx + (e^x + 1)^3 e^{-x}\,dy = 0$

14. $x(1 + y^2)^{1/2}\,dx = y(1 + x^2)^{1/2}\,dy$

15. $\dfrac{dS}{dr} = kS$

16. $\dfrac{dQ}{dt} = k(Q - 70)$

17. $\dfrac{dP}{dt} = P - P^2$

18. $\dfrac{dN}{dt} + N = Nte^{t+2}$

19. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{xy + 3x - y - 3}{xy - 2x + 4y - 8}$

20. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{xy + 2y - x - 2}{xy - 3y + x - 3}$

21. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = x\sqrt{1 - y^2}$

22. $(e^x + e^{-x})\dfrac{dy}{dx} = y^2$

In Problems 23–28 find an explicit solution of the given initial-value problem.

23. $\dfrac{dx}{dt} = 4(x^2 + 1), \quad x(\ \ /4) = 1$

24. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{y^2 - 1}{x^2 - 1}, \quad y(2) = 2$

25. $x^2\dfrac{dy}{dx} = y - xy, \quad y(-1) = -1$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

26. $\dfrac{dy}{dt} + 2y = 1, \quad y(0) = \frac{5}{2}$

27. $\sqrt{1 - y^2}\,dx - \sqrt{1 - x^2}\,dy = 0, \quad y(0) = \dfrac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$

28. $(1 + x^4)\,dy + x(1 + 4y^2)\,dx = 0, \quad y(1) = 0$

In Problems 29 and 30 proceed as in Example 5 and find an explicit solution of the given initial-value problem.

29. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = ye^{-x^2}, \quad y(4) = 1$

30. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = y^2 \sin x^2, \quad y(-2) = \frac{1}{3}$

In Problems 31–34 find an explicit solution of the given initial-value problem. Determine the exact interval I of definition by analytical methods. Use a graphing utility to plot the graph of the solution.

31. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{2x + 1}{2y}, \quad y(-2) = -1$

32. $(2y - 2)\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 3x^2 + 4x + 2, \quad y(1) = -2$

33. $e^y dx - e^{-x} dy = 0, \quad y(0) = 0$

34. $\sin x\,dx + y\,dy = 0, \quad y(0) = 1$

35. **(a)** Find a solution of the initial-value problem consisting of the differential equation in Example 3 and each of the initial-conditions: $y(0) = 2$, $y(0) = -2$, and $y\left(\frac{1}{4}\right) = 1$.

(b) Find the solution of the differential equation in Example 4 when $\ln c_1$ is used as the constant of integration on the *left-hand* side in the solution and $4 \ln c_1$ is replaced by $\ln c$. Then solve the same initial-value problems in part (a).

36. Find a solution of $x\dfrac{dy}{dx} = y^2 - y$ that passes through the indicated points.

(a) $(0, 1)$ **(b)** $(0, 0)$ **(c)** $\left(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}\right)$ **(d)** $\left(2, \frac{1}{4}\right)$

37. Find a singular solution of Problem 21. Of Problem 22.

38. Show that an implicit solution of

$$2x \sin^2 y\,dx - (x^2 + 10)\cos y\,dy = 0$$

is given by $\ln(x^2 + 10) + \csc y = c$. Find the constant solutions, if any, that were lost in the solution of the differential equation.

Often a radical change in the form of the solution of a differential equation corresponds to a very small change in either the initial condition or the equation itself. In Problems 39–42 find an explicit solution of the given initial-value problem. Use a graphing utility to plot the graph of each solution. Compare each solution curve in a neighborhood of (0, 1).

39. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = (y - 1)^2, \quad y(0) = 1$

40. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = (y - 1)^2, \quad y(0) = 1.01$

41. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = (y - 1)^2 + 0.01, \quad y(0) = 1$

42. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = (y - 1)^2 - 0.01, \quad y(0) = 1$

43. Every autonomous first-order equation $dy/dx = f(y)$ is separable. Find explicit solutions $y_1(x)$, $y_2(x)$, $y_3(x)$, and $y_4(x)$ of the differential equation $dy/dx = y - y^3$ that satisfy, in turn, the initial conditions $y_1(0) = 2$, $y_2(0) = \frac{1}{2}$, $y_3(0) = -\frac{1}{2}$, and $y_4(0) = -2$. Use a graphing utility to plot the graphs of each solution. Compare these graphs with those predicted in Problem 19 of Exercises 2.1. Give the exact interval of definition for each solution.

44. **(a)** The autonomous first-order differential equation $dy/dx = 1/(y - 3)$ has no critical points. Nevertheless, place 3 on the phase line and obtain a phase portrait of the equation. Compute d^2y/dx^2 to determine where solution curves are concave up and where they are concave down (see Problems 35 and 36 in Exercises 2.1). Use the phase portrait and concavity to sketch, by hand, some typical solution curves.

(b) Find explicit solutions $y_1(x)$, $y_2(x)$, $y_3(x)$, and $y_4(x)$ of the differential equation in part (a) that satisfy, in turn, the initial conditions $y_1(0) = 4$, $y_2(0) = 2$, $y_3(1) = 2$, and $y_4(-1) = 4$. Graph each solution and compare with your sketches in part (a). Give the exact interval of definition for each solution.

In Problems 45–50 use a technique of integration or a substitution to find an explicit solution of the given differential equation or initial-value problem.

45. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{1}{1 + \sin x}$ **46.** $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{\sin\sqrt{x}}{\sqrt{y}}$

47. $(\sqrt{x} + x)\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \sqrt{y} + y$ **48.** $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = y^{2/3} - y$

49. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{e^{\sqrt{x}}}{y}, \quad y(1) = 4$ **50.** $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{x \tan^{-1} x}{y}, \quad y(0) = 3$

Discussion Problems

51. **(a)** Explain why the interval of definition of the explicit solution $y = \phi_2(x)$ of the initial-value problem in Example 2 is the *open* interval $(-5, 5)$.

(b) Can any solution of the differential equation cross the x-axis? Do you think that $x^2 + y^2 = 1$ is an implicit solution of the initial-value problem $dy/dx = -x/y$, $y(1) = 0$?

52. **(a)** If $a > 0$, discuss the differences, if any, between the solutions of the initial-value problems consisting of the differential equation $dy/dx = x/y$ and

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

each of the initial conditions $y(a) = a$, $y(a) = -a$, $y(-a) = a$, and $y(-a) = -a$.

(b) Does the initial-value problem $dy/dx = x/y$, $y(0) = 0$ have a solution?

(c) Solve $dy/dx = x/y$, $y(1) = 2$ and give the exact interval I of definition of its solution.

53. In Problems 43 and 44 we saw that every autonomous first-order differential equation $dy/dx = f(y)$ is separable. Does this fact help in the solution of the initial-value problem $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \sqrt{1 + y^2}\sin^2 y, \quad y(0) = \frac{1}{2}$? Discuss. Sketch, by hand, a plausible solution curve of the problem.

54. **(a)** Solve the two initial-value problems:

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = y, \quad y(0) = 1$$

and

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = y + \frac{y}{x\ln x}, \quad y(e) = 1.$$

(b) Show that there are more than 1.65 million digits in the y-coordinate of the point of intersection of the two solution curves in part (a).

55. Find a function whose square plus the square of its derivative is 1.

56. **(a)** The differential equation in Problem 27 is equivalent to the normal form

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \sqrt{\frac{1 - y^2}{1 - x^2}}$$

in the square region in the xy-plane defined by $|x| < 1, |y| < 1$. But the quantity under the radical is nonnegative also in the regions defined by $|x| > 1$, $|y| > 1$. Sketch all regions in the xy-plane for which this differential equation possesses real solutions.

(b) Solve the DE in part (a) in the regions defined by $|x| > 1, |y| > 1$. Then find an implicit and an explicit solution of the differential equation subject to $y(2) = 2$.

Mathematical Model

57. **Suspension Bridge** In (16) of Section 1.3 we saw that a mathematical model for the shape of a flexible cable strung between two vertical supports is

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{W}{T_1}, \tag{10}$$

where W denotes the portion of the total vertical load between the points P_1 and P_2 shown in Figure 1.3.7. The DE (10) is separable under the following conditions that describe a suspension bridge.

Let us assume that the x- and y-axes are as shown in Figure 2.2.5—that is, the x-axis runs along the horizontal roadbed, and the y-axis passes through $(0, a)$, which is the lowest point on one cable over the span of the bridge, coinciding with the interval $[-L/2, L/2]$. In the case of a suspension bridge, the usual assumption is that the vertical load in (10) is only a uniform roadbed distributed along the horizontal axis. In other words, it is assumed that the weight of all cables is negligible in comparison to the weight of the roadbed and that the weight per unit length of the roadbed (say, pounds per horizontal foot) is a constant ρ. Use this information to set up and solve an appropriate initial-value problem from which the shape (a curve with equation $y = \phi(x)$) of each of the two cables in a suspension bridge is determined. Express your solution of the IVP in terms of the sag h and span L. See Figure 2.2.5.

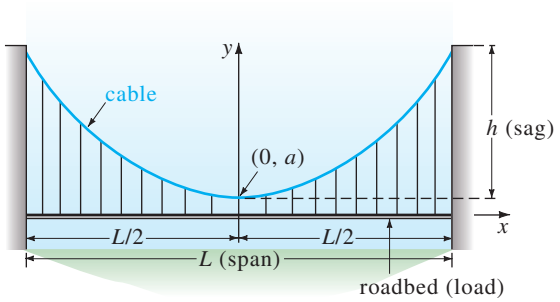


FIGURE 2.2.5 Shape of a cable in Problem 57

Computer Lab Assignments

58. **(a)** Use a CAS and the concept of level curves to plot representative graphs of members of the family of solutions of the differential equation $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = -\dfrac{8x + 5}{3y^2 + 1}$. Experiment with different numbers of level curves as well as various rectangular regions defined by $a \le x \le b$, $c \le y \le d$.

(b) On separate coordinate axes plot the graphs of the particular solutions corresponding to the initial conditions: $y(0) = -1$; $y(0) = 2$; $y(-1) = 4$; $y(-1) = -3$.

59. **(a)** Find an implicit solution of the IVP

$$(2y + 2)\,dy - (4x^3 + 6x)\,dx = 0, \quad y(0) = -3.$$

(b) Use part (a) to find an explicit solution $y = \phi(x)$ of the IVP.

(c) Consider your answer to part (b) as a *function* only. Use a graphing utility or a CAS to graph this function, and then use the graph to estimate its domain.

(d) With the aid of a root-finding application of a CAS, determine the approximate largest interval I of

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

definition of the *solution* $y = \phi(x)$ in part (b). Use a graphing utility or a CAS to graph the solution curve for the IVP on this interval.

60. (a) Use a CAS and the concept of level curves to plot representative graphs of members of the family of solutions of the differential equation $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{x(1 - x)}{y(-2 + y)}$. Experiment with different numbers of level curves as well as various rectangular regions in the xy-plane until your result resembles Figure 2.2.6.

(b) On separate coordinate axes, plot the graph of the implicit solution corresponding to the initial condition $y(0) = \frac{3}{2}$. Use a colored pencil to mark off that segment of the graph that corresponds to the solution curve of a solution ϕ that satisfies the initial condition. With the aid of a root-finding application of a CAS, determine the approximate largest interval I of definition of the solution ϕ. [*Hint*: First find the points on the curve in part (a) where the tangent is vertical.]

(c) Repeat part (b) for the initial condition $y(0) = -2$.

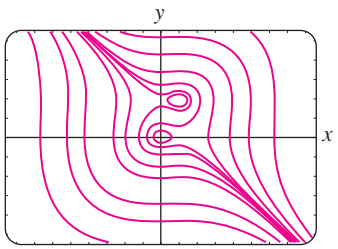


FIGURE 2.2.6 Level curves in Problem 60

2.3 LINEAR EQUATIONS

REVIEW MATERIAL

- Review the definitions of linear DEs in (6) and (7) of Section 1.1.

INTRODUCTION We continue our quest for solutions of first-order differential equations by next examining linear equations. Linear differential equations are an especially "friendly" family of differential equations, in that, given a linear equation, whether first order or a higher-order kin, there is always a good possibility that we can find some sort of solution of the equation that we can examine.

A Definitio The form of a linear first-order DE was given in (7) of Section 1.1. This form, the case when $n = 1$ in (6) of that section, is reproduced here for convenience.

DEFINITION 2.3.1 Linear Equation

A first-order differential equation of the form

$$a_1(x)\frac{dy}{dx} + a_0(x)y = g(x), \tag{1}$$

is said to be a linear equation in the variable y.

Standard Form By dividing both sides of (1) by the lead coefficient $a_1(x)$, we obtain a more useful form, the **standard form**, of a linear equation:

$$\frac{dy}{dx} + P(x)y = f(x). \tag{2}$$

We seek a solution of (2) on an interval I for which both coefficient functions P and f are continuous.

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Before we examine a general procedure for solving equations of form (2) we note that in some instances (2) can be solved by separation of variables. For example, you should verify that the equations

We match each equation with (2). In the first equation $P(x) = 2x$, $f(x) = 0$ and in the second $P(x) = -1$, $f(x) = 5$. ▶

$$\frac{dy}{dx} + 2xy = 0 \qquad \text{and} \qquad \frac{dy}{dx} = y + 5$$

are both linear and separable, but that the linear equation

$$\frac{dy}{dx} + y = x$$

is not separable.

Method of Solution The method for solving (2) hinges on a remarkable fact that the *left-hand side* of the equation can be recast into the form of the exact derivative of a product by multiplying the both sides of (2) by a special function $\mu(x)$. It is relatively easy to find the function $\mu(x)$ because we want

$$\overbrace{\frac{d}{dx}[\mu(x)y]}^{\text{product}} = \overbrace{\mu\frac{dy}{dx} + \frac{d\mu}{dx}y}^{\text{product rule}} = \overbrace{\mu\frac{dy}{dx} + \mu P y}^{\text{left hand side of (2) multipled by } \mu(x)}.$$

these must be equal

The equality is true provided that

$$\frac{d\mu}{dx} = \mu P.$$

The last equation can be solved by separation of variables. Integrating

$$\frac{d\mu}{\mu} = P dx \qquad \text{and solving} \qquad \ln|\mu(x)| = \int P(x)dx + c_1$$

See Problem 50 in Exercises 2.3 ▶

gives $\mu(x) = c_2 e^{\int P(x)dx}$. Even though there are an infinite choices of $\mu(x)$ (all constant multiples of $e^{\int P(x)dx}$), all produce the same desired result. Hence we can simplify life and choose $c_2 = 1$. The function

$$\mu(x) = e^{\int P(x)dx} \tag{3}$$

is called an **integrating factor** for equation (2).

Here is what we have so far: We multiplied both sides of (2) by (3) and, by construction, the left-hand side is the derivative of a product of the integrating factor and y:

$$e^{\int P(x)dx}\frac{dy}{dx} + P(x)e^{\int P(x)dx}y = e^{\int P(x)dx}f(x)$$

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left[e^{\int P(x)dx}y\right] = e^{\int P(x)dx}f(x).$$

Finally, we discover why (3) is called an *integrating* factor. We can integrate both sides of the last equation,

$$e^{\int P(x)dx}y = \int e^{\int P(x)dx}f(x) + c$$

and solve for y. The result is a one-parameter family of solutions of (2):

$$y = e^{-\int P(x)dx}\int e^{\int P(x)dx}f(x)dx + ce^{-\int P(x)dx}. \tag{4}$$

We emphasize that you should **not memorize** formula (4). The following procedure should be worked through each time.

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

SOLVING A LINEAR FIRST-ORDER EQUATION

(*i*) Remember to put a linear equation into the standard form (2).

(*ii*) From the standard form of the equation identify $P(x)$ and then find the integrating factor $e^{\int P(x)dx}$. No constant need be used in evaluating the indefinite integral $\int P(x)dx$.

(*iii*) Multiply the both sides of the standard form equation by the integrating factor. The left-hand side of the resulting equation is automatically the derivative of the product of the integrating factor $e^{\int P(x)dx}$ and y:

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left[e^{\int P(x)dx}y\right] = e^{\int P(x)dx}f(x).$$

(*iv*) Integrate both sides of the last equation and solve for y.

EXAMPLE 1 Solving a Linear Equation

Solve $\dfrac{dy}{dx} - 3y = 0.$

SOLUTION This linear equation can be solved by separation of variables. Alternatively, since the differential equation is already in standard form (2), we identify $P(x) = -3$, and so the integrating factor is $e^{\int(-3)dx} = e^{-3x}$. We then multiply the given equation by this factor and recognize that

$$e^{-3x}\frac{dy}{dx} - 3e^{-3x}y = e^{-3x}\cdot 0 \qquad \text{is the same as} \qquad \frac{d}{dx}[e^{-3x}y] = 0.$$

Integration of the last equation,

$$\int \frac{d}{dx}[e^{-3x}y]\,dx = \int 0\,dx$$

then yields $e^{-3x}y = c$ or $y = ce^{3x}$, $-\infty \quad x < \infty$.

EXAMPLE 2 Solving a Linear Equation

Solve $\dfrac{dy}{dx} - 3y = 6.$

SOLUTION This linear equation, like the one in Example 1, is already in standard form with $P(x) = -3$. Thus the integrating factor is again e^{-3x}. This time multiplying the given equation by this factor gives

$$e^{-3x}\frac{dy}{dx} - 3e^{-3x}y = 6e^{-3x} \qquad \text{and so} \qquad \frac{d}{dx}[e^{-3x}y] = 6e^{-3x}.$$

Integrating the last equation,

$$\int \frac{d}{dx}[e^{-3x}y]\,dx = 6\int e^{-3x}\,dx \qquad \text{gives} \qquad e^{-3x}y = -6\left(\frac{e^{-3x}}{3}\right) + c,$$

or $y = -2 + ce^{3x}$, $-\infty \quad x < \infty$.

When a_1, a_0, and g in (1) are constants, the differential equation is autonomous. In Example 2 you can verify from the normal form $dy/dx = 3(y + 2)$ that -2 is a critical point and that it is unstable (a repeller). Thus a solution curve with an

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

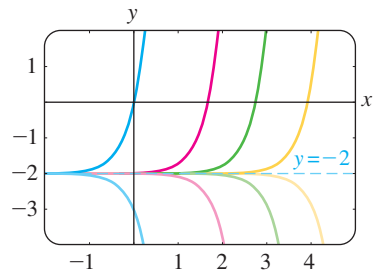


FIGURE 2.3.1 Solution curves of DE in Example 2

initial point either above or below the graph of the equilibrium solution $y = -2$ pushes away from this horizontal line as x increases. Figure 2.3.1, obtained with the aid of a graphing utility, shows the graph of $y = -2$ along with some additional solution curves.

General Solution Suppose again that the functions P and f in (2) are continuous on a common interval I. In the steps leading to (4) we showed that *if* (2) has a solution on I, then it must be of the form given in (4). Conversely, it is a straightforward exercise in differentiation to verify that any function of the form given in (4) is a solution of the differential equation (2) on I. In other words, (4) is a one-parameter family of solutions of equation (2) and *every solution of* (2) *defined on I is a member of this family* . Therefore we call (4) the **general solution** of the differential equation on the interval I. (See the *Remarks* at the end of Section 1.1.) Now by writing (2) in the normal form $y' = F(x, y)$, we can identify $F(x, y) = -P(x)y + f(x)$ and $\partial F/\partial y = -P(x)$. From the continuity of P and f on the interval I we see that F and $\partial F/\partial y$ are also continuous on I. With Theorem 1.2.1 as our justification, we conclude that there exists one and only one solution of the initial-value problem

$$\frac{dy}{dx} + P(x)y = f(x), \quad y(x_0) = y_0 \tag{5}$$

defined on *some* interval I_0 containing x_0. But when x_0 is in I, finding a solution of (5) is just a matter of finding an appropriate value of c in (4)—that is, to each x_0 in I there corresponds a distinct c. In other words, the interval I_0 of existence and uniqueness in Theorem 1.2.1 for the initial-value problem (5) is the entire interval I.

EXAMPLE 3 General Solution

Solve $x\dfrac{dy}{dx} - 4y = x^6e^x$.

SOLUTION Dividing by x, the standard form of the given DE is

$$\frac{dy}{dx} - \frac{4}{x}y = x^5e^x. \tag{6}$$

From this form we identify $P(x) = -4/x$ and $f(x) = x^5e^x$ and further observe that P and f are continuous on $(0, \infty)$. Hence the integrating factor is

we can use $\ln x$ instead of $\ln|x|$ since $x > 0$

$$e^{-4\int dx/x} = e^{-4\ln x} = e^{\ln x^{-4}} = x^{-4}.$$

Here we have used the basic identity $b^{\log_b N} = N, N > 0$. Now we multiply (6) by x^{-4} and rewrite

$$x^{-4}\frac{dy}{dx} - 4x^{-5}y = xe^x \qquad \text{as} \qquad \frac{d}{dx}[x^{-4}y] = xe^x.$$

It follows from integration by parts that the general solution defined on the interval $(0, \infty)$ is $x^{-4}y = xe^x - e^x + c$ or $y = x^5e^x - x^4e^x + cx^4$.

In case you are wondering why the interval $(0, \infty)$ is important in Example 3, read this paragraph and the paragraph following Example 4.

Except in the case in which the lead coefficient is 1, the recasting of equation (1) into the standard form (2) requires division by $a_1(x)$. Values of x for which $a_1(x) = 0$ are called **singular points** of the equation. Singular points are potentially troublesome. Specifically, in (2), if $P(x)$ (formed by dividing $a_0(x)$ by $a_1(x)$) is discontinuous at a point, the discontinuity may carry over to solutions of the differential equation.

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

EXAMPLE 4 General Solution

Find the general solution of $(x^2 - 9)\dfrac{dy}{dx} + xy = 0$.

SOLUTION We write the differential equation in standard form

$$\frac{dy}{dx} + \frac{x}{x^2 - 9}y = 0 \tag{7}$$

and identify $P(x) = x/(x^2 - 9)$. Although P is continuous on $(-\infty, -3)$, $(-3, 3)$, and $(3, \infty)$, we shall solve the equation on the first and third intervals. On these intervals the integrating factor is

$$e^{\int x\,dx/(x^2-9)} = e^{\frac{1}{2}\int 2x\,dx/(x^2-9)} = e^{\frac{1}{2}\ln|x^2-9|} = \sqrt{x^2 - 9}.$$

After multiplying the standard form (7) by this factor, we get

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left[\sqrt{x^2 - 9}\,y\right] = 0.$$

Integrating both sides of the last equation gives $\sqrt{x^2 - 9}\,y = c$. Thus for either $x > 3$ or $x < -3$ the general solution of the equation is $y = \dfrac{c}{\sqrt{x^2 - 9}}$. ≡

Notice in Example 4 that $x = 3$ and $x = -3$ are singular points of the equation and that every function in the general solution $y = c/\sqrt{x^2 - 9}$ is discontinuous at these points. On the other hand, $x = 0$ is a singular point of the differential equation in Example 3, but the general solution $y = x^5e^x - x^4e^x + cx^4$ is noteworthy in that every function in this one-parameter family is continuous at $x = 0$ and is defined on the interval $(-\infty, \infty)$ and not just on $(0, \infty)$, as stated in the solution. However, the family $y = x^5e^x - x^4e^x + cx^4$ defined on $(-\infty, \infty)$ cannot be considered the general solution of the DE, since the singular point $x = 0$ still causes a problem. See Problems 45 and 46 in Exercises 2.3.

EXAMPLE 5 An Initial-Value Problem

Solve $\dfrac{dy}{dx} + y = x, \quad y(0) = 4.$

SOLUTION The equation is in standard form, and $P(x) = 1$ and $f(x) = x$ are continuous on $(-\infty, \infty)$. The integrating factor is $e^{\int dx} = e^x$, so integrating

$$\frac{d}{dx}[e^x y] = xe^x$$

gives $e^x y = xe^x - e^x + c$. Solving this last equation for y yields the general solution $y = x - 1 + ce^{-x}$. But from the initial condition we know that $y = 4$ when $x = 0$. Substituting these values into the general solution implies that $c = 5$. Hence the solution of the problem is

$$y = x - 1 + 5e^{-x}, \quad -\infty < x < \infty. \tag{8}$$ ≡

Figure 2.3.2, obtained with the aid of a graphing utility, shows the graph of the solution (8) in dark blue along with the graphs of other members of the one-parameter family of solutions $y = x - 1 + ce^{-x}$. It is interesting to observe that as x increases, the graphs of *all* members of this family are close to the graph of the solution $y = x - 1$. The last solution corresponds to $c = 0$ in the family and is shown in

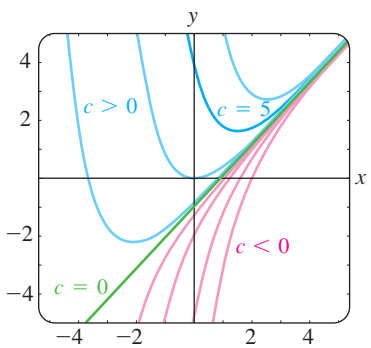


FIGURE 2.3.2 Solution curves of DE in Example 5

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

dark green in Figure 2.3.2. This asymptotic behavior of solutions is due to the fact that the contribution of ce^{-x}, $c \neq 0$, becomes negligible for increasing values of x. We say that ce^{-x} is a **transient term,** since $e^{-x} \to 0$ as $x \to \infty$. While this behavior is not characteristic of all general solutions of linear equations (see Example 2), the notion of a transient is often important in applied problems.

Discontinuous Coefficient In applications, the coefficients $P(x)$ and $f(x)$ in (2) may be piecewise continuous. In the next example $f(x)$ is piecewise continuous on $[0, \infty)$ with a single discontinuity, namely, a (finite) jump discontinuity at $x = 1$. We solve the problem in two parts corresponding to the two intervals over which f is defined. It is then possible to piece together the two solutions at $x = 1$ so that $y(x)$ is continuous on $[0, \infty)$.

EXAMPLE 6 An Initial-Value Problem

Solve $\dfrac{dy}{dx} + y = f(x), \quad y(0) = 0 \quad$ where $\quad f(x) = \begin{cases} 1, & 0 \le x \le 1, \\ 0, & x > 1. \end{cases}$

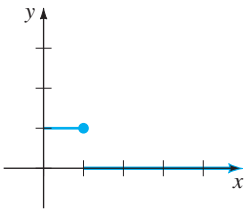


FIGURE 2.3.3 Discontinuous $f(x)$ in Example 6

SOLUTION The graph of the discontinuous function f is shown in Figure 2.3.3. We solve the DE for $y(x)$ first on the interval $[0, 1]$ and then on the interval $(1, \infty)$. For $0 \le x \le 1$ we have

$$\frac{dy}{dx} + y = 1 \qquad \text{or, equivalently,} \qquad \frac{d}{dx}[e^x y] = e^x.$$

Integrating this last equation and solving for y gives $y = 1 + c_1 e^{-x}$. Since $y(0) = 0$, we must have $c_1 = -1$, and therefore $y = 1 - e^{-x}$, $0 \le x \le 1$. Then for $x > 1$ the equation

$$\frac{dy}{dx} + y = 0$$

leads to $y = c_2 e^{-x}$. Hence we can write

$$y = \begin{cases} 1 - e^{-x}, & 0 \le x \le 1, \\ c_2 e^{-x}, & x > 1. \end{cases}$$

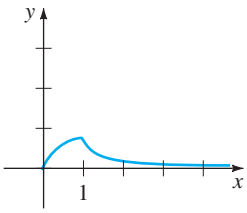


FIGURE 2.3.4 Graph of (9) in Example 6

By appealing to the definition of continuity at a point, it is possible to determine c_2 so that the foregoing function is continuous at $x = 1$. The requirement that $\lim_{x \to 1^+} y(x) = y(1)$ implies that $c_2 e^{-1} = 1 - e^{-1}$ or $c_2 = e - 1$. As seen in Figure 2.3.4, the function

$$y = \begin{cases} 1 - e^{-x}, & 0 \le x \le 1, \\ (e - 1)e^{-x}, & x > 1 \end{cases} \tag{9}$$

is continuous on $(0, \infty)$.

It is worthwhile to think about (9) and Figure 2.3.4 a little bit; you are urged to read and answer Problem 48 in Exercises 2.3.

Functions Defined by Integrals At the end of Section 2.2 we discussed the fact that some simple continuous functions do not possess antiderivatives that are elementary functions and that integrals of these kinds of functions are called **nonelementary.** For example, you may have seen in calculus that $\int e^{-x^2}\,dx$ and $\int \sin x^2\,dx$ are nonelementary integrals. In applied mathematics some important functions are *define* in terms of nonelementary integrals. Two such **special functions** are the **error function** and **complementary error function:**

$$\operatorname{erf}(x) = \frac{2}{\sqrt{\pi}} \int_0^x e^{-t^2}\,dt \qquad \text{and} \qquad \operatorname{erfc}(x) = \frac{2}{\sqrt{\pi}} \int_x^\infty e^{-t^2}\,dt. \tag{10}$$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

From the known result $\int_0^\infty e^{-t^2}\,dt = \sqrt{\ }/2$* we can write $(2/\sqrt{\ })\int_0^\infty e^{-t^2}\,dt = 1$. Then from $\int_0^\infty = \int_0^x + \int_x^\infty$ it is seen from (10) that the complementary error function erfc(x) is related to erf(x) by $\text{erf}(x) + \text{erfc}(x) = 1$. Because of its importance in probability, statistics, and applied partial differential equations, the error function has been extensively tabulated. Note that $\text{erf}(0) = 0$ is one obvious function value. Values of erf(x) can also be found by using a CAS.

EXAMPLE 7 The Error Function

Solve the initial-value problem $\dfrac{dy}{dx} - 2xy = 2, \quad y(0) = 1.$

SOLUTION Since the equation is already in standard form, we see that the integrating factor is e^{-x^2}, so from

$$\frac{d}{dx}[e^{-x^2}y] = 2e^{-x^2} \qquad \text{we get} \qquad y = 2e^{x^2}\int_0^x e^{-t^2}\,dt + ce^{x^2}. \tag{11}$$

Applying $y(0) = 1$ to the last expression then gives $c = 1$. Hence the solution of the problem is

$$y = 2e^{x^2}\int_0^x e^{-t^2}\,dt + e^{x^2} \qquad \text{or} \qquad y = e^{x^2}[1 + \sqrt{\ }\,\text{erf}(x)].$$

The graph of this solution on the interval $(-\infty, \infty)$, shown in dark blue in Figure 2.3.5 among other members of the family defined in (11), was obtained with the aid of a computer algebra system.

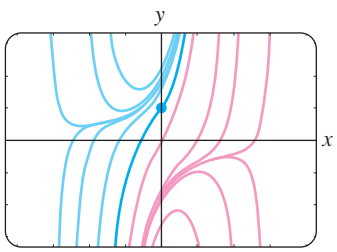


FIGURE 2.3.5 Solution curves of DE in Example 7

Use of Computers The computer algebra systems *Mathematica* and *Maple* are capable of producing implicit or explicit solutions for some kinds of differential equations using their *dsolve* commands.†

REMARKS

(*i*) A linear first-order differential equation

$$a_1(x)\frac{dy}{dx} + a_0(x)y = 0$$

is said to be **homogeneous,** whereas the equation

$$a_1(x)\frac{dy}{dx} + a_0(x)y = g(x)$$

with $g(x)$ not identically zero is said to be **nonhomogeneous.** For example, the linear equations $xy' + y = 0$ and $xy' + y = e^x$ are, in turn, homogeneous and nonhomogeneous. As can be seen in this example the trivial solution $y = 0$ is always a solution of a homogeneous linear DE. Store this terminology in the back of your mind because it becomes important when we study linear higher-order ordinary differential equations in Chapter 4.

*This result is usually proved in the third semester of calculus.

†Certain commands have the same spelling, but in *Mathematica* commands begin with a capital letter **(DSolve),** whereas in *Maple* the same command begins with a lower case letter **(dsolve).** When discussing such common syntax, we compromise and write, for example, *dsolve.* See the *Student Resource Manual* for the complete input commands used to solve a linear first-order DE.

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

(*ii*) Occasionally, a first-order differential equation is not linear in one variable but in linear in the other variable. For example, the differential equation

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{1}{x + y^2}$$

is not linear in the variable y. But its reciprocal

$$\frac{dx}{dy} = x + y^2 \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{dx}{dy} - x = y^2$$

is recognized as linear in the variable x. You should verify that the integrating factor $e^{\int(-1)dy} = e^{-y}$ and integration by parts yield the explicit solution $x = -y^2 - 2y - 2 + ce^y$ for the second equation. This expression is then an implicit solution of the first equation.

(*iii*) Mathematicians have adopted as their own certain words from engineering, which they found appropriately descriptive. The word *transient,* used earlier, is one of these terms. In future discussions the words *input* and *output* will occasionally pop up. The function f in (2) is called the **input** or **driving function;** a solution $y(x)$ of the differential equation for a given input is called the **output** or **response.**

(*iv*) The term **special functions** mentioned in conjunction with the error function also applies to the **sine integral function** and the **Fresnel sine integral** introduced in Problems 55 and 56 in Exercises 2.3. "Special Functions" is actually a well-defined branch of mathematics. More special functions are studied in Section 6.4.

EXERCISES 2.3

Answers to selected odd-numbered problems begin on page ANS-2.

In Problems 1–24 find the general solution of the given differential equation. Give the largest interval I over which the general solution is defined. Determine whether there are any transient terms in the general solution.

1. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 5y$

2. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} + 2y = 0$

3. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} + y = e^{3x}$

4. $3\dfrac{dy}{dx} + 12y = 4$

5. $y' + 3x^2y = x^2$

6. $y' + 2xy = x^3$

7. $x^2y' + xy = 1$

8. $y' = 2y + x^2 + 5$

9. $x\dfrac{dy}{dx} - y = x^2 \sin x$

10. $x\dfrac{dy}{dx} + 2y = 3$

11. $x\dfrac{dy}{dx} + 4y = x^3 - x$

12. $(1 + x)\dfrac{dy}{dx} - xy = x + x^2$

13. $x^2y' + x(x + 2)y = e^x$

14. $xy' + (1 + x)y = e^{-x} \sin 2x$

15. $y\,dx - 4(x + y^6)\,dy = 0$

16. $y\,dx = (ye^y - 2x)\,dy$

17. $\cos x\dfrac{dy}{dx} + (\sin x)y = 1$

18. $\cos^2 x \sin x\dfrac{dy}{dx} + (\cos^3 x)y = 1$

19. $(x + 1)\dfrac{dy}{dx} + (x + 2)y = 2xe^{-x}$

20. $(x + 2)^2\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 5 - 8y - 4xy$

21. $\dfrac{dr}{d\theta} + r \sec\theta = \cos\theta$

22. $\dfrac{dP}{dt} + 2tP = P + 4t - 2$

23. $x\dfrac{dy}{dx} + (3x + 1)y = e^{-3x}$

24. $(x^2 - 1)\dfrac{dy}{dx} + 2y = (x + 1)^2$

In Problems 25–36 solve the given initial-value problem. Give the largest interval I over which the solution is defined.

25. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = x + 5y, \quad y(0) = 3$

26. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 2x - 3y, \quad y(0) = \frac{1}{3}$

27. $xy' + y = e^x, \quad y(1) = 2$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

28. $y\dfrac{dx}{dy} - x = 2y^2, \quad y(1) = 5$

29. $L\dfrac{di}{dt} + Ri = E, \quad i(0) = i_0, \quad L, R, E, i_0$ constants

30. $\dfrac{dT}{dt} = k(T - T_m), \quad T(0) = T_0, \quad k, T_m, T_0$ constants

31. $x\dfrac{dy}{dx} + y = 4x + 1, \quad y(1) = 8$

32. $y' + 4xy = x^3e^{x^2}, \quad y(0) = -1$

33. $(x + 1)\dfrac{dy}{dx} + y = \ln x, \quad y(1) = 10$

34. $x(x + 1)\dfrac{dy}{dx} + xy = 1, \quad y(e) = 1$

35. $y' - (\sin x)y = 2\sin x, \quad y(\ \ /2) = 1$

36. $y' + (\tan x)y = \cos^2 x, \quad y(0) = -1$

In Problems 37–40 proceed as in Example 6 to solve the given initial-value problem. Use a graphing utility to graph the continuous function $y(x)$.

37. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} + 2y = f(x), y(0) = 0,$ where

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 1, & 0 \le x \le 3 \\ 0, & x > 3 \end{cases}$$

38. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} + y = f(x), y(0) = 1,$ where

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 1, & 0 \le x \le 1 \\ -1, & x > 1 \end{cases}$$

39. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} + 2xy = f(x), y(0) = 2,$ where

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x, & 0 \le x \quad 1 \\ 0, & x \ge 1 \end{cases}$$

40. $(1 + x^2)\dfrac{dy}{dx} + 2xy = f(x), y(0) = 0,$ where

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x, & 0 \le x \quad 1 \\ -x, & x \ge 1 \end{cases}$$

41. Proceed in a manner analogous to Example 6 to solve the initial-value problem $y' + P(x)y = 4x, y(0) = 3,$ where

$$P(x) = \begin{cases} 2, & 0 \le x \le 1, \\ -2/x, & x > 1. \end{cases}$$

Use a graphing utility to graph the continuous function $y(x)$.

42. Consider the initial-value problem $y' + e^x y = f(x)$, $y(0) = 1$. Express the solution of the IVP for $x > 0$ as a nonelementary integral when $f(x) = 1$. What is the solution when $f(x) = 0$? When $f(x) = e^x$?

43. Express the solution of the initial-value problem $y' - 2xy = 1, y(1) = 1,$ in terms of $\text{erf}(x)$.

Discussion Problems

44. Reread the discussion following Example 2. Construct a linear first-order differential equation for which all nonconstant solutions approach the horizontal asymptote $y = 4$ as $x \to \infty$.

45. Reread Example 3 and then discuss, with reference to Theorem 1.2.1, the existence and uniqueness of a solution of the initial-value problem consisting of $xy' - 4y = x^6e^x$ and the given initial condition.

(a) $y(0) = 0$ **(b)** $y(0) = y_0, y_0 > 0$

(c) $y(x_0) = y_0, x_0 > 0, y_0 > 0$

46. Reread Example 4 and then find the general solution of the differential equation on the interval $(-3, 3)$.

47. Reread the discussion following Example 5. Construct a linear first-order differential equation for which all solutions are asymptotic to the line $y = 3x - 5$ as $x \to \infty$.

48. Reread Example 6 and then discuss why it is technically incorrect to say that the function in (9) is a "solution" of the IVP on the interval $[0, \infty)$.

49. **(a)** Construct a linear first-order differential equation of the form $xy' + a_0(x)y = g(x)$ for which $y_c = c/x^3$ and $y_p = x^3$. Give an interval on which $y = x^3 + c/x^3$ is the general solution of the DE.

(b) Give an initial condition $y(x_0) = y_0$ for the DE found in part (a) so that the solution of the IVP is $y = x^3 - 1/x^3$. Repeat if the solution is $y = x^3 + 2/x^3$. Give an interval I of definition of each of these solutions. Graph the solution curves. Is there an initial-value problem whose solution is defined on $(-\infty, \infty)$?

(c) Is each IVP found in part (b) unique? That is, can there be more than one IVP for which, say, $y = x^3 - 1/x^3$, x in some interval I, is the solution?

50. In determining the integrating factor (3), we did not use a constant of integration in the evaluation of $\int P(x)\,dx$. Explain why using $\int P(x)\,dx + c_1$ has no effect on the solution of (2).

51. Suppose $P(x)$ is continuous on some interval I and a is a number in I. What can be said about the solution of the initial-value problem $y' + P(x)y = 0, y(a) = 0$?

Mathematical Models

52. **Radioactive Decay Series** The following system of differential equations is encountered in the study of the decay of a special type of radioactive series of elements:

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = -\lambda_1 x$$
$$\frac{dy}{dt} = \lambda_1 x - \lambda_2 y,$$

where λ_1 and λ_2 are constants. Discuss how to solve this system subject to $x(0) = x_0$, $y(0) = y_0$. Carry out your ideas.

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

53. Heart Pacemaker A heart pacemaker consists of a switch, a battery of constant voltage E_0, a capacitor with constant capacitance C, and the heart as a resistor with constant resistance R. When the switch is closed, the capacitor charges; when the switch is open, the capacitor discharges, sending an electrical stimulus to the heart. During the time the heart is being stimulated, the voltage E across the heart satisfies the linear differential equation

$$\frac{dE}{dt} = -\frac{1}{RC}E.$$

Solve the DE, subject to $E(4) = E_0$.

Computer Lab Assignments

54. (a) Express the solution of the initial-value problem $y' - 2xy = -1$, $y(0) = \sqrt{\ }/2$, in terms of erfc(x).

(b) Use tables or a CAS to find the value of $y(2)$. Use a CAS to graph the solution curve for the IVP on $(-\infty, \infty)$.

55. (a) The **sine integral function** is defined by $\text{Si}(x) = \int_0^x (\sin t/t)\, dt$, where the integrand is defined to be 1 at $t = 0$. Express the solution $y(x)$ of the initial-value problem $x^3y' + 2x^2y = 10 \sin x$, $y(1) = 0$ in terms of Si(x).

(b) Use a CAS to graph the solution curve for the IVP for $x > 0$.

(c) Use a CAS to find the value of the absolute maximum of the solution $y(x)$ for $x > 0$.

56. (a) The **Fresnel sine integral** is defined by $S(x) = \int_0^x \sin(\pi t^2/2)\, dt$. Express the solution $y(x)$ of the initial-value problem $y' - (\sin x^2)y = 0$, $y(0) = 5$, in terms of $S(x)$.

(b) Use a CAS to graph the solution curve for the IVP on $(-\infty, \infty)$.

(c) It is known that $S(x) \to \frac{1}{2}$ as $x \to \infty$ and $S(x) \to -\frac{1}{2}$ as $x \to -\infty$. What does the solution $y(x)$ approach as $x \to \infty$? As $x \to -\infty$?

(d) Use a CAS to find the values of the absolute maximum and the absolute minimum of the solution $y(x)$.

2.4 EXACT EQUATIONS

REVIEW MATERIAL

- Multivariate calculus
- Partial differentiation and partial integration
- Differential of a function of two variables

INTRODUCTION Although the simple first-order equation

$$y\, dx + x\, dy = 0$$

is separable, we can solve the equation in an alternative manner by recognizing that the expression on the left-hand side of the equality is the differential of the function $f(x, y) = xy$; that is,

$$d(xy) = y\, dx + x\, dy.$$

In this section we examine first-order equations in differential form $M(x, y)\, dx + N(x, y)\, dy = 0$. By applying a simple test to M and N, we can determine whether $M(x, y)\, dx + N(x, y)\, dy$ is a differential of a function $f(x, y)$. If the answer is yes, we can construct f by partial integration.

Differential of a Function of Two Variables If $z = f(x, y)$ is a function of two variables with continuous first partial derivatives in a region R of the xy-plane, then its differential is

$$dz = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}dx + \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}dy. \tag{1}$$

In the special case when $f(x, y) = c$, where c is a constant, then (1) implies

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}dx + \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}dy = 0. \tag{2}$$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

In other words, given a one-parameter family of functions $f(x, y) = c$, we can generate a first-order differential equation by computing the differential of both sides of the equality. For example, if $x^2 - 5xy + y^3 = c$, then (2) gives the first-order DE

$$(2x - 5y)\,dx + (-5x + 3y^2)\,dy = 0. \tag{3}$$

A Definitio Of course, not every first-order DE written in differential form $M(x, y)\,dx + N(x, y)\,dy = 0$ corresponds to a differential of $f(x, y) = c$. So for our purposes it is more important to turn the foregoing example around; namely, if we are given a first-order DE such as (3), is there some way we can recognize that the differential expression $(2x - 5y)\,dx + (-5x + 3y^2)\,dy$ is the differential $d(x^2 - 5xy + y^3)$? If there is, then an implicit solution of (3) is $x^2 - 5xy + y^3 = c$. We answer this question after the next definition.

DEFINITION 2.4.1 Exact Equation

A differential expression $M(x, y)\,dx + N(x, y)\,dy$ is an **exact differential** in a region R of the xy-plane if it corresponds to the differential of some function $f(x, y)$ defined in R. A first-order differential equation of the form

$$M(x, y)\,dx + N(x, y)\,dy = 0$$

is said to be an **exact equation** if the expression on the left-hand side is an exact differential.

For example, $x^2y^3\,dx + x^3y^2\,dy = 0$ is an exact equation, because its left-hand side is an exact differential:

$$d\left(\tfrac{1}{3}x^3y^3\right) = x^2y^3\,dx + x^3y^2\,dy.$$

Notice that if we make the identifications $M(x, y) = x^2y^3$ and $N(x, y) = x^3y^2$, then $\partial M/\partial y = 3x^2y^2 = \partial N/\partial x$. Theorem 2.4.1, given next, shows that the equality of the partial derivatives $\partial M/\partial y$ and $\partial N/\partial x$ is no coincidence.

THEOREM 2.4.1 Criterion for an Exact Differential

Let $M(x, y)$ and $N(x, y)$ be continuous and have continuous first partial derivatives in a rectangular region R defined by $a \quad x \quad b, c \quad y \quad d$. Then a necessary and sufficient condition that $M(x, y)\,dx + N(x, y)\,dy$ be an exact differential is

$$\frac{\partial M}{\partial y} = \frac{\partial N}{\partial x}. \tag{4}$$

PROOF OF THE NECESSITY For simplicity let us assume that $M(x, y)$ and $N(x, y)$ have continuous first partial derivatives for all (x, y). Now if the expression $M(x, y)\,dx + N(x, y)\,dy$ is exact, there exists some function f such that for all x in R,

$$M(x, y)\,dx + N(x, y)\,dy = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}\,dx + \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}\,dy.$$

Therefore $$M(x, y) = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}, \qquad N(x, y) = \frac{\partial f}{\partial y},$$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

and $$\frac{\partial M}{\partial y} = \frac{\partial}{\partial y}\left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}\right) = \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y\,\partial x} = \frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial y}\right) = \frac{\partial N}{\partial x}.$$

The equality of the mixed partials is a consequence of the continuity of the first partial derivatives of $M(x, y)$ and $N(x, y)$.

The sufficiency part of Theorem 2.4.1 consists of showing that there exists a function f for which $\partial f/\partial x = M(x, y)$ and $\partial f/\partial y = N(x, y)$ whenever (4) holds. The construction of the function f actually reflects a basic procedure for solving exact equations.

Method of Solution Given an equation in the differential form $M(x, y)\,dx + N(x, y)\,dy = 0$, determine whether the equality in (4) holds. If it does, then there exists a function f for which

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} = M(x, y).$$

We can find f by integrating $M(x, y)$ with respect to x while holding y constant:

$$f(x, y) = \int M(x, y)\,dx + g(y), \tag{5}$$

where the arbitrary function $g(y)$ is the "constant" of integration. Now differentiate (5) with respect to y and assume that $\partial f/\partial y = N(x, y)$:

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial y} = \frac{\partial}{\partial y}\int M(x, y)\,dx + g'(y) = N(x, y).$$

This gives $$g'(y) = N(x, y) - \frac{\partial}{\partial y}\int M(x, y)\,dx. \tag{6}$$

Finally, integrate (6) with respect to y and substitute the result in (5). The implicit solution of the equation is $f(x, y) = c$.

Some observations are in order. First, it is important to realize that the expression $N(x, y) - (\partial/\partial y)\int M(x, y)\,dx$ in (6) is independent of x, because

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left[N(x, y) - \frac{\partial}{\partial y}\int M(x, y)\,dx\right] = \frac{\partial N}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial}{\partial y}\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\int M(x, y)\,dx\right) = \frac{\partial N}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial M}{\partial y} = 0.$$

Second, we could just as well start the foregoing procedure with the assumption that $\partial f/\partial y = N(x, y)$. After integrating N with respect to y and then differentiating that result, we would find the analogues of (5) and (6) to be, respectively,

$$f(x, y) = \int N(x, y)\,dy + h(x) \qquad \text{and} \qquad h'(x) = M(x, y) - \frac{\partial}{\partial x}\int N(x, y)\,dy.$$

In either case *none of these formulas should be memorized.*

EXAMPLE 1 Solving an Exact DE

Solve $2xy\,dx + (x^2 - 1)\,dy = 0$.

SOLUTION With $M(x, y) = 2xy$ and $N(x, y) = x^2 - 1$ we have

$$\frac{\partial M}{\partial y} = 2x = \frac{\partial N}{\partial x}.$$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Ziyad Asaad

Thus the equation is exact, and so by Theorem 2.4.1 there exists a function $f(x, y)$ such that

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} = 2xy \qquad \text{and} \qquad \frac{\partial f}{\partial y} = x^2 - 1.$$

From the first of these equations we obtain, after integrating,

$$f(x, y) = x^2y + g(y).$$

Taking the partial derivative of the last expression with respect to y and setting the result equal to $N(x, y)$ gives

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial y} = x^2 + g'(y) = x^2 - 1. \qquad \leftarrow N(x, y)$$

It follows that $g'(y) = -1$ and $g(y) = -y$. Hence $f(x, y) = x^2y - y$, so the solution of the equation in implicit form is $x^2y - y = c$. The explicit form of the solution is easily seen to be $y = c/(1 - x^2)$ and is defined on any interval not containing either $x = 1$ or $x = -1$.

Note The solution of the DE in Example 1 is *not* $f(x, y) = x^2y - y$. Rather, it is $f(x, y) = c$; if a constant is used in the integration of $g'(y)$, we can then write the solution as $f(x, y) = 0$. Note, too, that the equation could be solved by separation of variables.

EXAMPLE 2 Solving an Exact DE

Solve $(e^{2y} - y\cos xy)\,dx + (2xe^{2y} - x\cos xy + 2y)\,dy = 0$.

SOLUTION The equation is exact because

$$\frac{\partial M}{\partial y} = 2e^{2y} + xy\sin xy - \cos xy = \frac{\partial N}{\partial x}.$$

Hence a function $f(x, y)$ exists for which

$$M(x, y) = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x} \qquad \text{and} \qquad N(x, y) = \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}.$$

Now, for variety, we shall start with the assumption that $\partial f/\partial y = N(x, y)$; that is,

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial y} = 2xe^{2y} - x\cos xy + 2y$$

$$f(x, y) = 2x\int e^{2y}\,dy - x\int \cos xy\,dy + 2\int y\,dy.$$

Remember, the reason x can come out in front of the symbol $\int$ is that in the integration with respect to y, x is treated as an ordinary constant. It follows that

$$f(x, y) = xe^{2y} - \sin xy + y^2 + h(x)$$

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} = e^{2y} - y\cos xy + h'(x) = e^{2y} - y\cos xy, \qquad \leftarrow M(x, y)$$

and so $h'(x) = 0$ or $h(x) = c$. Hence a family of solutions is

$$xe^{2y} - \sin xy + y^2 + c = 0.$$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

EXAMPLE 3 An Initial-Value Problem

Solve $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{xy^2 - \cos x \sin x}{y(1 - x^2)}, \quad y(0) = 2.$

SOLUTION By writing the differential equation in the form

$$(\cos x \sin x - xy^2)\,dx + y(1 - x^2)\,dy = 0,$$

we recognize that the equation is exact because

$$\frac{\partial M}{\partial y} = -2xy = \frac{\partial N}{\partial x}.$$

Now
$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial y} = y(1 - x^2)$$

$$f(x, y) = \frac{y^2}{2}(1 - x^2) + h(x)$$

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} = -xy^2 + h'(x) = \cos x \sin x - xy^2.$$

The last equation implies that $h'(x) = \cos x \sin x$. Integrating gives

$$h(x) = -\int (\cos x)(-\sin x\,dx) = -\frac{1}{2}\cos^2 x.$$

Thus
$$\frac{y^2}{2}(1 - x^2) - \frac{1}{2}\cos^2 x = c_1 \qquad \text{or} \qquad y^2(1 - x^2) - \cos^2 x = c, \tag{7}$$

where $2c_1$ has been replaced by c. The initial condition $y = 2$ when $x = 0$ demands that $4(1) - \cos^2(0) = c$, and so $c = 3$. An implicit solution of the problem is then $y^2(1 - x^2) - \cos^2 x = 3$.

The solution curve of the IVP is the curve drawn in blue in Figure 2.4.1; it is part of an interesting family of curves. The graphs of the members of the one-parameter family of solutions given in (7) can be obtained in several ways, two of which are using software to graph level curves (as discussed in Section 2.2) and using a graphing utility to carefully graph the explicit functions obtained for various values of c by solving $y^2 = (c + \cos^2 x)/(1 - x^2)$ for y.

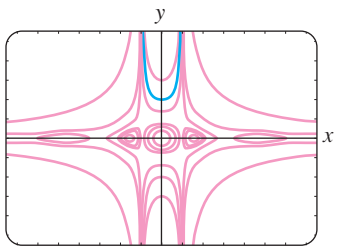


FIGURE 2.4.1 Solution curves of DE in Example 3

Integrating Factors Recall from Section 2.3 that the left-hand side of the linear equation $y' + P(x)y = f(x)$ can be transformed into a derivative when we multiply the equation by an integrating factor. The same basic idea sometimes works for a nonexact differential equation $M(x, y)\,dx + N(x, y)\,dy = 0$. That is, it is sometimes possible to find an **integrating factor** $\mu(x, y)$ so that after multiplying, the left-hand side of

$$\mu(x, y)M(x, y)\,dx + \mu(x, y)N(x, y)\,dy = 0 \tag{8}$$

is an exact differential. In an attempt to find μ, we turn to the criterion (4) for exactness. Equation (8) is exact if and only if $(\mu M)_y = (\mu N)_x$, where the subscripts denote partial derivatives. By the Product Rule of differentiation the last equation is the same as $\mu M_y + \mu_y M = \mu N_x + \mu_x N$ or

$$\mu_x N - \mu_y M = (M_y - N_x)\mu. \tag{9}$$

Although M, N, M_y, and N_x are known functions of x and y, the difficulty here in determining the unknown $\mu(x, y)$ from (9) is that we must solve a partial differential

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

equation. Since we are not prepared to do that, we make a simplifying assumption. Suppose μ is a function of one variable; for example, say that μ depends only on x. In this case, $\mu_x = d\mu/dx$ and $\mu_y = 0$, so (9) can be written as

$$\frac{d\mu}{dx} = \frac{M_y - N_x}{N}\,\mu. \tag{10}$$

We are still at an impasse if the quotient $(M_y - N_x)/N$ depends on both x and y. However, if after all obvious algebraic simplifications are made, the quotient $(M_y - N_x)/N$ turns out to depend solely on the variable x, then (10) is a first-order ordinary differential equation. We can finally determine μ because (10) is *separable* as well as *linear*. It follows from either Section 2.2 or Section 2.3 that $\mu(x) = e^{\int((M_y - N_x)/N)\,dx}$. In like manner, it follows from (9) that if μ depends only on the variable y, then

$$\frac{d\mu}{dy} = \frac{N_x - M_y}{M}\,\mu. \tag{11}$$

In this case, if $(N_x - M_y)/M$ is a function of y only, then we can solve (11) for μ.

We summarize the results for the differential equation

$$M(x, y)\,dx + N(x, y)\,dy = 0. \tag{12}$$

- If $(M_y - N_x)/N$ is a function of x alone, then an integrating factor for (12) is

$$\mu(x) = e^{\int \frac{M_y - N_x}{N}\,dx}. \tag{13}$$

- If $(N_x - M_y)/M$ is a function of y alone, then an integrating factor for (12) is

$$\mu(y) = e^{\int \frac{N_x - M_y}{M}\,dy}. \tag{14}$$

EXAMPLE 4 A Nonexact DE Made Exact

The nonlinear first-order differential equation

$$xy\,dx + (2x^2 + 3y^2 - 20)\,dy = 0$$

is not exact. With the identifications $M = xy$, $N = 2x^2 + 3y^2 - 20$, we find the partial derivatives $M_y = x$ and $N_x = 4x$. The first quotient from (13) gets us nowhere, since

$$\frac{M_y - N_x}{N} = \frac{x - 4x}{2x^2 + 3y^2 - 20} = \frac{-3x}{2x^2 + 3y^2 - 20}$$

depends on x and y. However, (14) yields a quotient that depends only on y:

$$\frac{N_x - M_y}{M} = \frac{4x - x}{xy} = \frac{3x}{xy} = \frac{3}{y}.$$

The integrating factor is then $e^{\int 3dy/y} = e^{3\ln y} = e^{\ln y^3} = y^3$. After we multiply the given DE by $\mu(y) = y^3$, the resulting equation is

$$xy^4\,dx + (2x^2y^3 + 3y^5 - 20y^3)\,dy = 0.$$

You should verify that the last equation is now exact as well as show, using the method of this section, that a family of solutions is $\frac{1}{2}x^2y^4 + \frac{1}{2}y^6 - 5y^4 = c$. ≡

REMARKS

(*i*) When testing an equation for exactness, make sure it is of the precise form $M(x, y)\,dx + N(x, y)\,dy = 0$. Sometimes a differential equation is written $G(x, y)\,dx = H(x, y)\,dy$. In this case, first rewrite it as $G(x, y)\,dx - H(x, y)\,dy = 0$ and then identify $M(x, y) = G(x, y)$ and $N(x, y) = -H(x, y)$ before using (4).

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

(*ii*) In some texts on differential equations the study of exact equations precedes that of linear DEs. Then the method for finding integrating factors just discussed can be used to derive an integrating factor for $y' + P(x)y = f(x)$. By rewriting the last equation in the differential form $(P(x)y - f(x))\,dx + dy = 0$, we see that

$$\frac{M_y - N_x}{N} = P(x).$$

From (13) we arrive at the already familiar integrating factor $e^{\int P(x)dx}$ used in Section 2.3.

EXERCISES 2.4

Answers to selected odd-numbered problems begin on page ANS-2.

In Problems 1–20 determine whether the given differential equation is exact. If it is exact, solve it.

1. $(2x - 1)\,dx + (3y + 7)\,dy = 0$

2. $(2x + y)\,dx - (x + 6y)\,dy = 0$

3. $(5x + 4y)\,dx + (4x - 8y^3)\,dy = 0$

4. $(\sin y - y \sin x)\,dx + (\cos x + x \cos y - y)\,dy = 0$

5. $(2xy^2 - 3)\,dx + (2x^2y + 4)\,dy = 0$

6. $\left(2y - \frac{1}{x} + \cos 3x\right)\frac{dy}{dx} + \frac{y}{x^2} - 4x^3 + 3y \sin 3x = 0$

7. $(x^2 - y^2)\,dx + (x^2 - 2xy)\,dy = 0$

8. $\left(1 + \ln x + \frac{y}{x}\right)dx = (1 - \ln x)\,dy$

9. $(x - y^3 + y^2 \sin x)\,dx = (3xy^2 + 2y \cos x)\,dy$

10. $(x^3 + y^3)\,dx + 3xy^2\,dy = 0$

11. $(y \ln y - e^{-xy})\,dx + \left(\frac{1}{y} + x \ln y\right)dy = 0$

12. $(3x^2y + e^y)\,dx + (x^3 + xe^y - 2y)\,dy = 0$

13. $x\frac{dy}{dx} = 2xe^x - y + 6x^2$

14. $\left(1 - \frac{3}{y} + x\right)\frac{dy}{dx} + y = \frac{3}{x} - 1$

15. $\left(x^2y^3 - \frac{1}{1 + 9x^2}\right)\frac{dx}{dy} + x^3y^2 = 0$

16. $(5y - 2x)y' - 2y = 0$

17. $(\tan x - \sin x \sin y)\,dx + \cos x \cos y\,dy = 0$

18. $(2y \sin x \cos x - y + 2y^2e^{xy^2})\,dx = (x - \sin^2 x - 4xye^{xy^2})\,dy$

19. $(4t^3y - 15t^2 - y)\,dt + (t^4 + 3y^2 - t)\,dy = 0$

20. $\left(\frac{1}{t} + \frac{1}{t^2} - \frac{y}{t^2 + y^2}\right)dt + \left(ye^y + \frac{t}{t^2 + y^2}\right)dy = 0$

In Problems 21–26 solve the given initial-value problem.

21. $(x + y)^2\,dx + (2xy + x^2 - 1)\,dy = 0, \quad y(1) = 1$

22. $(e^x + y)\,dx + (2 + x + ye^y)\,dy = 0, \quad y(0) = 1$

23. $(4y + 2t - 5)\,dt + (6y + 4t - 1)\,dy = 0, \quad y(-1) = 2$

24. $\left(\frac{3y^2 - t^2}{y^5}\right)\frac{dy}{dt} + \frac{t}{2y^4} = 0, \quad y(1) = 1$

25. $(y^2 \cos x - 3x^2y - 2x)\,dx + (2y \sin x - x^3 + \ln y)\,dy = 0, \quad y(0) = e$

26. $\left(\frac{1}{1 + y^2} + \cos x - 2xy\right)\frac{dy}{dx} = y(y + \sin x),\ y(0) = 1$

In Problems 27 and 28 find the value of k so that the given differential equation is exact.

27. $(y^3 + kxy^4 - 2x)\,dx + (3xy^2 + 20x^2y^3)\,dy = 0$

28. $(6xy^3 + \cos y)\,dx + (2kx^2y^2 - x \sin y)\,dy = 0$

In Problems 29 and 30 verify that the given differential equation is not exact. Multiply the given differential equation by the indicated integrating factor $\mu(x, y)$ and verify that the new equation is exact. Solve.

29. $(-xy \sin x + 2y \cos x)\,dx + 2x \cos x\,dy = 0;$
$\mu(x, y) = xy$

30. $(x^2 + 2xy - y^2)\,dx + (y^2 + 2xy - x^2)\,dy = 0;$
$\mu(x, y) = (x + y)^{-2}$

In Problems 31–36 solve the given differential equation by finding, as in Example 4, an appropriate integrating factor.

31. $(2y^2 + 3x)\,dx + 2xy\,dy = 0$

32. $y(x + y + 1)\,dx + (x + 2y)\,dy = 0$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

33. $6xy\,dx + (4y + 9x^2)\,dy = 0$

34. $\cos x\,dx + \left(1 + \dfrac{2}{y}\right)\sin x\,dy = 0$

35. $(10 - 6y + e^{-3x})\,dx - 2\,dy = 0$

36. $(y^2 + xy^3)\,dx + (5y^2 - xy + y^3 \sin y)\,dy = 0$

In Problems 37 and 38 solve the given initial-value problem by finding, as in Example 4, an appropriate integrating factor.

37. $x\,dx + (x^2y + 4y)\,dy = 0, \quad y(4) = 0$

38. $(x^2 + y^2 - 5)\,dx = (y + xy)\,dy, \quad y(0) = 1$

39. **(a)** Show that a one-parameter family of solutions of the equation

$$(4xy + 3x^2)\,dx + (2y + 2x^2)\,dy = 0$$

is $x^3 + 2x^2y + y^2 = c$.

(b) Show that the initial conditions $y(0) = -2$ and $y(1) = 1$ determine the same implicit solution.

(c) Find explicit solutions $y_1(x)$ and $y_2(x)$ of the differential equation in part (a) such that $y_1(0) = -2$ and $y_2(1) = 1$. Use a graphing utility to graph $y_1(x)$ and $y_2(x)$.

Discussion Problems

40. Consider the concept of an integrating factor used in Problems 29–38. Are the two equations $M\,dx + N\,dy = 0$ and $\mu M\,dx + \mu N\,dy = 0$ necessarily equivalent in the sense that a solution of one is also a solution of the other? Discuss.

41. Reread Example 3 and then discuss why we can conclude that the interval of definition of the explicit solution of the IVP (the blue curve in Figure 2.4.1) is $(-1, 1)$.

42. Discuss how the functions $M(x, y)$ and $N(x, y)$ can be found so that each differential equation is exact. Carry out your ideas.

(a) $M(x, y)\,dx + \left(xe^{xy} + 2xy + \dfrac{1}{x}\right)dy = 0$

(b) $\left(x^{-1/2}y^{1/2} + \dfrac{x}{x^2 + y}\right)dx + N(x, y)\,dy = 0$

43. Differential equations are sometimes solved by having a clever idea. Here is a little exercise in cleverness: Although the differential equation $(x - \sqrt{x^2 + y^2})\,dx + y\,dy = 0$ is not exact, show how the rearrangement $(x\,dx + y\,dy)/\sqrt{x^2 + y^2} = dx$ and the observation $\frac{1}{2}d(x^2 + y^2) = x\,dx + y\,dy$ can lead to a solution.

44. True or False: Every separable first-order equation $dy/dx = g(x)h(y)$ is exact.

Mathematical Model

45. Falling Chain A portion of a uniform chain of length 8 ft is loosely coiled around a peg at the edge of a high horizontal platform, and the remaining portion of the chain hangs at rest over the edge of the platform. See Figure 2.4.2. Suppose that the length of the overhanging chain is 3 ft, that the chain weighs 2 lb/ft, and that the positive direction is downward. Starting at $t = 0$ seconds, the weight of the overhanging portion causes the chain on the table to uncoil smoothly and to fall to the floor. If $x(t)$ denotes the length of the chain overhanging the table at time $t > 0$, then $v = dx/dt$ is its velocity. When all resistive forces are ignored, it can be shown that a mathematical model relating v to x is given by

$$xv\frac{dv}{dx} + v^2 = 32x.$$

(a) Rewrite this model in differential form. Proceed as in Problems 31–36 and solve the DE for v in terms of x by finding an appropriate integrating factor. Find an explicit solution $v(x)$.

(b) Determine the velocity with which the chain leaves the platform.

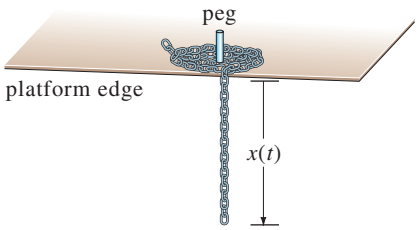


FIGURE 2.4.2 Uncoiling chain in Problem 45

Computer Lab Assignments

46. Streamlines

(a) The solution of the differential equation

$$\frac{2xy}{(x^2 + y^2)^2}\,dx + \left[1 + \frac{y^2 - x^2}{(x^2 + y^2)^2}\right]dy = 0$$

is a family of curves that can be interpreted as streamlines of a fluid flow around a circular object whose boundary is described by the equation $x^2 + y^2 = 1$. Solve this DE and note the solution $f(x, y) = c$ for $c = 0$.

(b) Use a CAS to plot the streamlines for $c = 0$, ± 0.2, ± 0.4, ± 0.6, and ± 0.8 in three different ways. First, use the *contourplot* of a CAS. Second, solve for x in terms of the variable y. Plot the resulting two functions of y for the given values of c, and then combine the graphs. Third, use the CAS to solve a cubic equation for y in terms of x.

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2.5 SOLUTIONS BY SUBSTITUTIONS

REVIEW MATERIAL

- Techniques of integration
- Separation of variables
- Solution of linear DEs

INTRODUCTION We usually solve a differential equation by recognizing it as a certain kind of equation (say, separable, linear, or exact) and then carrying out a procedure, consisting of *equation-specific mathematical steps,* that yields a solution of the equation. But it is not uncommon to be stumped by a differential equation because it does not fall into one of the classes of equations that we know how to solve. The procedures that are discussed in this section may be helpful in this situation.

Substitutions Often the first step in solving a differential equation consists of transforming it into another differential equation by means of a **substitution.** For example, suppose we wish to transform the first-order differential equation $dy/dx = f(x, y)$ by the substitution $y = g(x, u)$, where u is regarded as a function of the variable x. If g possesses first-partial derivatives, then the Chain Rule

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{\partial g}{\partial x}\frac{dx}{dx} + \frac{\partial g}{\partial u}\frac{du}{dx} \qquad \text{gives} \qquad \frac{dy}{dx} = g_x(x, u) + g_u(x, u)\frac{du}{dx}.$$

If we replace dy/dx by the foregoing derivative and replace y in $f(x, y)$ by $g(x, u)$, then the DE $dy/dx = f(x, y)$ becomes $g_x(x, u) + g_u(x, u)\dfrac{du}{dx} = f(x, g(x, u))$, which, solved for du/dx, has the form $\dfrac{du}{dx} = F(x, u)$. If we can determine a solution $u = \phi(x)$ of this last equation, then a solution of the original differential equation is $y = g(x, \phi(x))$.

In the discussion that follows we examine three different kinds of first-order differential equations that are solvable by means of a substitution.

Homogeneous Equations If a function f possesses the property $f(tx, ty) = t^\alpha f(x, y)$ for some real number α, then f is said to be a **homogeneous function** of degree α. For example, $f(x, y) = x^3 + y^3$ is a homogeneous function of degree 3, since

$$f(tx, ty) = (tx)^3 + (ty)^3 = t^3(x^3 + y^3) = t^3 f(x, y),$$

whereas $f(x, y) = x^3 + y^3 + 1$ is not homogeneous. A first-order DE in differential form

$$M(x, y)\,dx + N(x, y)\,dy = 0 \tag{1}$$

is said to be **homogeneous**[*] if both coefficient functions M and N are homogeneous functions of the *same* degree. In other words, (1) is homogeneous if

$$M(tx, ty) = t^\alpha M(x, y) \qquad \text{and} \qquad N(tx, ty) = t^\alpha N(x, y).$$

In addition, if M and N are homogeneous functions of degree α, we can also write

$$M(x, y) = x^\alpha M(1, u) \qquad \text{and} \qquad N(x, y) = x^\alpha N(1, u), \quad \text{where } u = y/x, \tag{2}$$

[*]Here the word *homogeneous* does not mean the same as it did in the *Remarks* at the end of Section 2.3. Recall that a linear first-order equation $a_1(x)y' + a_0(x)y = g(x)$ is homogeneous when $g(x) = 0$.

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

and

$$M(x, y) = y^{\alpha}M(v, 1) \qquad \text{and} \qquad N(x, y) = y^{\alpha}N(v, 1), \quad \text{where } v = x/y. \tag{3}$$

See Problem 31 in Exercises 2.5. Properties (2) and (3) suggest the substitutions that can be used to solve a homogeneous differential equation. Specifically, *either* of the substitutions $y = ux$ or $x = vy$, where u and v are new dependent variables, will reduce a homogeneous equation to a *separable* first-order differential equation. To show this, observe that as a consequence of (2) a homogeneous equation $M(x, y)\,dx + N(x, y)\,dy = 0$ can be rewritten as

$$x^{\alpha}M(1, u)\,dx + x^{\alpha}N(1, u)\,dy = 0 \qquad \text{or} \qquad M(1, u)\,dx + N(1, u)\,dy = 0,$$

where $u = y/x$ or $y = ux$. By substituting the differential $dy = u\,dx + x\,du$ into the last equation and gathering terms, we obtain a separable DE in the variables u and x:

$$M(1, u)\,dx + N(1, u)[u\,dx + x\,du] = 0$$
$$[M(1, u) + uN(1, u)]\,dx + xN(1, u)\,du = 0$$

or

$$\frac{dx}{x} + \frac{N(1, u)\,du}{M(1, u) + uN(1, u)} = 0.$$

At this point we offer the same advice as in the preceding sections: Do not memorize anything here (especially the last formula); rather, *work through the procedure each time*. The proof that the substitutions $x = vy$ and $dx = v\,dy + y\,dv$ also lead to a separable equation follows in an analogous manner from (3).

EXAMPLE 1 Solving a Homogeneous DE

Solve $(x^2 + y^2)\,dx + (x^2 - xy)\,dy = 0$.

SOLUTION Inspection of $M(x, y) = x^2 + y^2$ and $N(x, y) = x^2 - xy$ shows that these coefficients are homogeneous functions of degree 2. If we let $y = ux$, then $dy = u\,dx + x\,du$, so after substituting, the given equation becomes

$$(x^2 + u^2x^2)\,dx + (x^2 - ux^2)[u\,dx + x\,du] = 0$$
$$x^2(1 + u)\,dx + x^3(1 - u)\,du = 0$$
$$\frac{1 - u}{1 + u}\,du + \frac{dx}{x} = 0$$
$$\left[-1 + \frac{2}{1 + u}\right]du + \frac{dx}{x} = 0. \quad \leftarrow \text{long division}$$

After integration the last line gives

$$-u + 2\ln|1 + u| + \ln|x| = \ln|c|$$
$$-\frac{y}{x} + 2\ln\left|1 + \frac{y}{x}\right| + \ln|x| = \ln|c|. \quad \leftarrow \text{resubstituting } u = y/x$$

Using the properties of logarithms, we can write the preceding solution as

$$\ln\left|\frac{(x + y)^2}{cx}\right| = \frac{y}{x} \qquad \text{or} \qquad (x + y)^2 = cxe^{y/x}.$$

Although either of the indicated substitutions can be used for every homogeneous differential equation, in practice we try $x = vy$ whenever the function $M(x, y)$ is simpler than $N(x, y)$. Also it could happen that after using one substitution, we may encounter integrals that are difficult or impossible to evaluate in closed form; switching substitutions may result in an easier problem.

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Bernoulli's Equation The differential equation

$$\frac{dy}{dx} + P(x)y = f(x)y^n, \tag{4}$$

where n is any real number, is called **Bernoulli's equation.** Note that for $n = 0$ and $n = 1$, equation (4) is linear. For $n \neq 0$ and $n \neq 1$ the substitution $u = y^{1-n}$ reduces any equation of form (4) to a linear equation.

EXAMPLE 2 Solving a Bernoulli DE

Solve $x\dfrac{dy}{dx} + y = x^2y^2$.

SOLUTION We first rewrite the equation as

$$\frac{dy}{dx} + \frac{1}{x}y = xy^2$$

by dividing by x. With $n = 2$ we have $u = y^{-1}$ or $y = u^{-1}$. We then substitute

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy}{du}\frac{du}{dx} = -u^{-2}\frac{du}{dx} \qquad \leftarrow \text{Chain Rule}$$

into the given equation and simplify. The result is

$$\frac{du}{dx} - \frac{1}{x}u = -x.$$

The integrating factor for this linear equation on, say, $(0, \infty)$ is

$$e^{-\int dx/x} = e^{-\ln x} = e^{\ln x^{-1}} = x^{-1}.$$

Integrating

$$\frac{d}{dx}[x^{-1}u] = -1$$

gives $x^{-1}u = -x + c$ or $u = -x^2 + cx$. Since $u = y^{-1}$, we have $y = 1/u$, so a solution of the given equation is $y = 1/(-x^2 + cx)$.

Note that we have not obtained the general solution of the original nonlinear differential equation in Example 2, since $y = 0$ is a singular solution of the equation.

Reduction to Separation of Variables A differential equation of the form

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = f(Ax + By + C) \tag{5}$$

can always be reduced to an equation with separable variables by means of the substitution $u = Ax + By + C$, $B \neq 0$. Example 3 illustrates the technique.

EXAMPLE 3 An Initial-Value Problem

Solve $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = (-2x + y)^2 - 7, \quad y(0) = 0.$

SOLUTION If we let $u = -2x + y$, then $du/dx = -2 + dy/dx$, so the differential equation is transformed into

$$\frac{du}{dx} + 2 = u^2 - 7 \qquad \text{or} \qquad \frac{du}{dx} = u^2 - 9.$$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

The last equation is separable. Using partial fractions

$$\frac{du}{(u-3)(u+3)} = dx \qquad \text{or} \qquad \frac{1}{6}\left[\frac{1}{u-3} - \frac{1}{u+3}\right] du = dx$$

and then integrating yields

$$\frac{1}{6}\ln\left|\frac{u-3}{u+3}\right| = x + c_1 \qquad \text{or} \qquad \frac{u-3}{u+3} = e^{6x+6c_1} = ce^{6x}. \quad \leftarrow \text{replace } e^{6c_1} \text{ by } c$$

Solving the last equation for u and then resubstituting gives the solution

$$u = \frac{3(1+ce^{6x})}{1-ce^{6x}} \qquad \text{or} \qquad y = 2x + \frac{3(1+ce^{6x})}{1-ce^{6x}}. \tag{6}$$

Finally, applying the initial condition $y(0) = 0$ to the last equation in (6) gives $c = -1$. Figure 2.5.1, obtained with the aid of a graphing utility, shows the graph of the particular solution $y = 2x + \dfrac{3(1-e^{6x})}{1+e^{6x}}$ in dark blue, along with the graphs of some other members of the family of solutions (6).

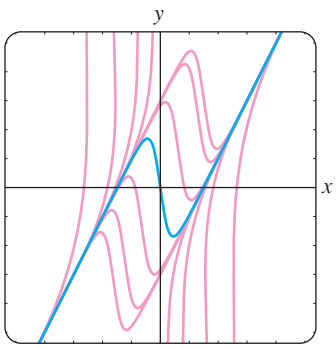


FIGURE 2.5.1 Solutions of DE in Example 3

EXERCISES 2.5

Answers to selected odd-numbered problems begin on page ANS-2.

Each DE in Problems 1–14 is homogeneous.

In Problems 1–10 solve the given differential equation by using an appropriate substitution.

1. $(x-y)\,dx + x\,dy = 0$

2. $(x+y)\,dx + x\,dy = 0$

3. $x\,dx + (y-2x)\,dy = 0$

4. $y\,dx = 2(x+y)\,dy$

5. $(y^2+yx)\,dx - x^2\,dy = 0$

6. $(y^2+yx)\,dx + x^2\,dy = 0$

7. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{y-x}{y+x}$

8. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{x+3y}{3x+y}$

9. $-y\,dx + \left(x + \sqrt{xy}\right)dy = 0$

10. $x\dfrac{dy}{dx} = y + \sqrt{x^2-y^2}, \quad x > 0$

In Problems 11–14 solve the given initial-value problem.

11. $xy^2\dfrac{dy}{dx} = y^3 - x^3, \quad y(1) = 2$

12. $(x^2+2y^2)\dfrac{dx}{dy} = xy, \quad y(-1) = 1$

13. $(x + ye^{y/x})\,dx - xe^{y/x}\,dy = 0, \quad y(1) = 0$

14. $y\,dx + x(\ln x - \ln y - 1)\,dy = 0, \quad y(1) = e$

Each DE in Problems 15–22 is a Bernoulli equation.

In Problems 15–20 solve the given differential equation by using an appropriate substitution.

15. $x\dfrac{dy}{dx} + y = \dfrac{1}{y^2}$

16. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} - y = e^x y^2$

17. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = y(xy^3 - 1)$

18. $x\dfrac{dy}{dx} - (1+x)y = xy^2$

19. $t^2\dfrac{dy}{dt} + y^2 = ty$

20. $3(1+t^2)\dfrac{dy}{dt} = 2ty(y^3 - 1)$

In Problems 21 and 22 solve the given initial-value problem.

21. $x^2\dfrac{dy}{dx} - 2xy = 3y^4, \quad y(1) = \frac{1}{2}$

22. $y^{1/2}\dfrac{dy}{dx} + y^{3/2} = 1, \quad y(0) = 4$

Each DE in Problems 23–30 is of the form given in (5).

In Problems 23–28 solve the given differential equation by using an appropriate substitution.

23. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = (x+y+1)^2$

24. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{1-x-y}{x+y}$

25. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \tan^2(x+y)$

26. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \sin(x+y)$

27. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 2 + \sqrt{y-2x+3}$

28. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 1 + e^{y-x+5}$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

In Problems 29 and 30 solve the given initial-value problem.

29. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \cos(x + y), \quad y(0) = \quad /4$

30. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{3x + 2y}{3x + 2y + 2}, \quad y(-1) = -1$

Discussion Problems

31. Explain why it is always possible to express any homogeneous differential equation $M(x, y)\,dx + N(x, y)\,dy = 0$ in the form

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = F\left(\frac{y}{x}\right).$$

You might start by proving that

$$M(x, y) = x^{\alpha}M(1, y/x) \qquad \text{and} \qquad N(x, y) = x^{\alpha}N(1, y/x).$$

32. Put the homogeneous differential equation

$$(5x^2 - 2y^2)\,dx - xy\,dy = 0$$

into the form given in Problem 31.

33. **(a)** Determine two singular solutions of the DE in Problem 10.

(b) If the initial condition $y(5) = 0$ is as prescribed in Problem 10, then what is the largest interval I over which the solution is defined? Use a graphing utility to graph the solution curve for the IVP.

34. In Example 3 the solution $y(x)$ becomes unbounded as $x \to \pm\infty$. Nevertheless, $y(x)$ is asymptotic to a curve as $x \to -\infty$ and to a different curve as $x \to \infty$. What are the equations of these curves?

35. The differential equation $dy/dx = P(x) + Q(x)y + R(x)y^2$ is known as **Riccati's equation.**

(a) A Riccati equation can be solved by a succession of two substitutions *provided* that we know a particular solution y_1 of the equation. Show that the substitution $y = y_1 + u$ reduces Riccati's equation to a Bernoulli equation (4) with $n = 2$. The Bernoulli equation can then be reduced to a linear equation by the substitution $w = u^{-1}$.

(b) Find a one-parameter family of solutions for the differential equation

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = -\frac{4}{x^2} - \frac{1}{x}y + y^2$$

where $y_1 = 2/x$ is a known solution of the equation.

36. Determine an appropriate substitution to solve

$$xy' = y\ln(xy).$$

Mathematical Models

37. Falling Chain In Problem 45 in Exercises 2.4 we saw that a mathematical model for the velocity v of a chain slipping off the edge of a high horizontal platform is

$$xv\frac{dv}{dx} + v^2 = 32x.$$

In that problem you were asked to solve the DE by converting it into an exact equation using an integrating factor. This time solve the DE using the fact that it is a Bernoulli equation.

38. Population Growth In the study of population dynamics one of the most famous models for a growing but bounded population is the **logistic equation**

$$\frac{dP}{dt} = P(a - bP),$$

where a and b are positive constants. Although we will come back to this equation and solve it by an alternative method in Section 3.2, solve the DE this first time using the fact that it is a Bernoulli equation.

2.6 A NUMERICAL METHOD

INTRODUCTION A first-order differential equation $dy/dx = f(x, y)$ is a source of information. We started this chapter by observing that we could garner *qualitative* information from a first-order DE about its solutions even before we attempted to solve the equation. Then in Sections 2.2–2.5 we examined first-order DEs *analytically*—that is, we developed some procedures for obtaining explicit and implicit solutions. But a differential equation can a possess a solution, yet we may not be able to obtain it analytically. So to round out the picture of the different types of analyses of differential equations, we conclude this chapter with a method by which we can "solve" the differential equation *numerically*—this means that the DE is used as the cornerstone of an algorithm for approximating the unknown solution.

In this section we are going to develop only the simplest of numerical methods—a method that utilizes the idea that a tangent line can be used to approximate the values of a function in a small neighborhood of the point of tangency. A more extensive treatment of numerical methods for ordinary differential equations is given in Chapter 9.

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

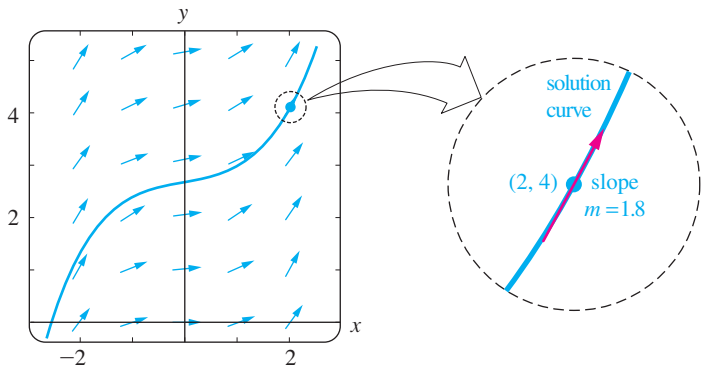
Ziyad Asaad

Using the Tangent Line Let us assume that the first-order initial-value problem

$$y' = f(x, y), \quad y(x_0) = y_0 \tag{1}$$

possesses a solution. One way of approximating this solution is to use tangent lines. For example, let $y(x)$ denote the unknown solution of the first-order initial-value problem $y' = 0.1\sqrt{y} + 0.4x^2$, $y(2) = 4$. The nonlinear differential equation in this IVP cannot be solved directly by any of the methods considered in Sections 2.2, 2.4, and 2.5; nevertheless, we can still find approximate numerical values of the unknown $y(x)$. Specifically, suppose we wish to know the value of $y(2.5)$. The IVP has a solution, and as the flow of the direction field of the DE in Figure 2.6.1(a) suggests, a solution curve must have a shape similar to the curve shown in blue.

The direction field in Figure 2.6.1(a) was generated with lineal elements passing through points in a grid with integer coordinates. As the solution curve passes through the initial point (2, 4), the lineal element at this point is a tangent line with slope given by $f(2, 4) = 0.1\sqrt{4} + 0.4(2)^2 = 1.8$. As is apparent in Figure 2.6.1(a) and the "zoom in" in Figure 2.6.1(b), when x is close to 2, the points on the solution curve are close to the points on the tangent line (the lineal element). Using the point (2, 4), the slope $f(2, 4) = 1.8$, and the point-slope form of a line, we find that an equation of the tangent line is $y = L(x)$, where $L(x) = 1.8x + 0.4$. This last equation, called a **linearization** of $y(x)$ at $x = 2$, can be used to approximate values of $y(x)$ within a small neighborhood of $x = 2$. If $y_1 = L(x_1)$ denotes the y-coordinate on the tangent line and $y(x_1)$ is the y-coordinate on the solution curve corresponding to an x-coordinate x_1 that is close to $x = 2$, then $y(x_1) \approx y_1$. If we choose, say, $x_1 = 2.1$, then $y_1 = L(2.1) = 1.8(2.1) + 0.4 = 4.18$, so $y(2.1) \approx 4.18$.



(a) direction fiel for $y \geq 0$ **(b)** lineal element at (2, 4)

FIGURE 2.6.1 Magnification of a neighborhood about the point (2, 4)

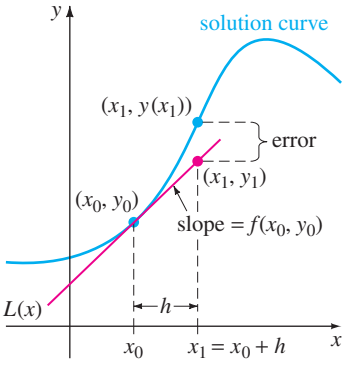


FIGURE 2.6.2 Approximating $y(x_1)$ using a tangent line

Euler's Method To generalize the procedure just illustrated, we use the linearization of the unknown solution $y(x)$ of (1) at $x = x_0$:

$$L(x) = y_0 + f(x_0, y_0)(x - x_0). \tag{2}$$

The graph of this linearization is a straight line tangent to the graph of $y = y(x)$ at the point (x_0, y_0). We now let h be a positive increment of the x-axis, as shown in Figure 2.6.2. Then by replacing x by $x_1 = x_0 + h$ in (2), we get

$$L(x_1) = y_0 + f(x_0, y_0)(x_0 + h - x_0) \qquad \text{or} \qquad y_1 = y_0 + hf(x_1, y_1),$$

where $y_1 = L(x_1)$. The point (x_1, y_1) on the tangent line is an approximation to the point $(x_1, y(x_1))$ on the solution curve. Of course, the accuracy of the approximation $L(x_1) \approx y(x_1)$ or $y_1 \approx y(x_1)$ depends heavily on the size of the increment h. Usually, we must choose this **step size** to be "reasonably small." We now repeat the process using a second "tangent line" at (x_1, y_1).* By identifying the new starting

*This is not an actual tangent line, since (x_1, y_1) lies on the first tangent and not on the solution curve.

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

point as (x_1, y_1) with (x_0, y_0) in the above discussion, we obtain an approximation $y_2 \approx y(x_2)$ corresponding to two steps of length h from x_0, that is, $x_2 = x_1 + h = x_0 + 2h$, and

$$y(x_2) = y(x_0 + 2h) = y(x_1 + h) \approx y_2 = y_1 + hf(x_1, y_1).$$

Continuing in this manner, we see that $y_1, y_2, y_3, \ldots$, can be defined recursively by the general formula

$$y_{n+1} = y_n + hf(x_n, y_n), \tag{3}$$

where $x_n = x_0 + nh$, $n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$. This procedure of using successive "tangent lines" is called **Euler's method.**

EXAMPLE 1 Euler's Method

Consider the initial-value problem $y' = 0.1\sqrt{y} + 0.4x^2$, $y(2) = 4$. Use Euler's method to obtain an approximation of $y(2.5)$ using first $h = 0.1$ and then $h = 0.05$.

SOLUTION With the identification $f(x, y) = 0.1\sqrt{y} + 0.4x^2$, (3) becomes

$$y_{n+1} = y_n + h\left(0.1\sqrt{y_n} + 0.4x_n^2\right).$$

Then for $h = 0.1$, $x_0 = 2$, $y_0 = 4$, and $n = 0$ we find

$$y_1 = y_0 + h\left(0.1\sqrt{y_0} + 0.4x_0^2\right) = 4 + 0.1\left(0.1\sqrt{4} + 0.4(2)^2\right) = 4.18,$$

which, as we have already seen, is an estimate to the value of $y(2.1)$. However, if we use the smaller step size $h = 0.05$, it takes two steps to reach $x = 2.1$. From

$$y_1 = 4 + 0.05\left(0.1\sqrt{4} + 0.4(2)^2\right) = 4.09$$

$$y_2 = 4.09 + 0.05\left(0.1\sqrt{4.09} + 0.4(2.05)^2\right) = 4.18416187$$

we have $y_1 \approx y(2.05)$ and $y_2 \approx y(2.1)$. The remainder of the calculations were carried out by using software. The results are summarized in Tables 2.6.1 and 2.6.2, where each entry has been rounded to four decimal places. We see in Tables 2.6.1 and 2.6.2 that it takes five steps with $h = 0.1$ and 10 steps with $h = 0.05$, respectively, to get to $x = 2.5$. Intuitively, we would expect that $y_{10} = 5.0997$ corresponding to $h = 0.05$ is the better approximation of $y(2.5)$ than the value $y_5 = 5.0768$ corresponding to $h = 0.1$.

TABLE 2.6.1 $h = 0.1$

x_n	y_n
2.00	4.0000
2.10	4.1800
2.20	4.3768
2.30	4.5914
2.40	4.8244
2.50	5.0768

TABLE 2.6.2 $h = 0.05$

x_n	y_n
2.00	4.0000
2.05	4.0900
2.10	4.1842
2.15	4.2826
2.20	4.3854
2.25	4.4927
2.30	4.6045
2.35	4.7210
2.40	4.8423
2.45	4.9686
2.50	5.0997

In Example 2 we apply Euler's method to a differential equation for which we have already found a solution. We do this to compare the values of the approximations y_n at each step with the true or actual values of the solution $y(x_n)$ of the initial-value problem.

EXAMPLE 2 Comparison of Approximate and Actual Values

Consider the initial-value problem $y' = 0.2xy$, $y(1) = 1$. Use Euler's method to obtain an approximation of $y(1.5)$ using first $h = 0.1$ and then $h = 0.05$.

SOLUTION With the identification $f(x, y) = 0.2xy$, (3) becomes

$$y_{n+1} = y_n + h(0.2x_n y_n)$$

where $x_0 = 1$ and $y_0 = 1$. Again with the aid of computer software we obtain the values in Tables 2.6.3 and 2.6.4 on page 78.

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

TABLE 2.6.3 $h = 0.1$

x_n	y_n	Actual value	Abs. error	% Rel. error
1.00	1.0000	1.0000	0.0000	0.00
1.10	1.0200	1.0212	0.0012	0.12
1.20	1.0424	1.0450	0.0025	0.24
1.30	1.0675	1.0714	0.0040	0.37
1.40	1.0952	1.1008	0.0055	0.50
1.50	1.1259	1.1331	0.0073	0.64

TABLE 2.6.4 $h = 0.05$

x_n	y_n	Actual value	Abs. error	% Rel. error
1.00	1.0000	1.0000	0.0000	0.00
1.05	1.0100	1.0103	0.0003	0.03
1.10	1.0206	1.0212	0.0006	0.06
1.15	1.0318	1.0328	0.0009	0.09
1.20	1.0437	1.0450	0.0013	0.12
1.25	1.0562	1.0579	0.0016	0.16
1.30	1.0694	1.0714	0.0020	0.19
1.35	1.0833	1.0857	0.0024	0.22
1.40	1.0980	1.1008	0.0028	0.25
1.45	1.1133	1.1166	0.0032	0.29
1.50	1.1295	1.1331	0.0037	0.32

In Example 1 the true or actual values were calculated from the known solution $y = e^{0.1(x^2-1)}$. (Verify.) The **absolute error** is defined to be

$$|\textit{actual value} - \textit{approximation}|.$$

The **relative error** and **percentage relative error** are, in turn,

$$\frac{\textit{absolute error}}{|\textit{actual value}|} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\textit{absolute error}}{|\textit{actual value}|} \times 100.$$

It is apparent from Tables 2.6.3 and 2.6.4 that the accuracy of the approximations improves as the step size h decreases. Also, we see that even though the percentage relative error is growing with each step, it does not appear to be that bad. But you should not be deceived by one example. If we simply change the coefficient of the right side of the DE in Example 2 from 0.2 to 2, then at $x_n = 1.5$ the percentage relative errors increase dramatically. See Problem 4 in Exercises 2.6.

A Caveat Euler's method is just one of many different ways in which a solution of a differential equation can be approximated. Although attractive for its simplicity, *Euler's method is seldom used in serious calculations.* It was introduced here simply to give you a first taste of numerical methods. We will go into greater detail in discussing numerical methods that give significantly greater accuracy, notably the **fourth order Runge-Kutta method,** referred to as the **RK4 method,** in Chapter 9.

Numerical Solvers Regardless of whether we can actually find an explicit or implicit solution, if a solution of a differential equation exists, it represents a smooth curve in the Cartesian plane. The basic idea behind *any* numerical method for first-order ordinary differential equations is to somehow approximate the y-values of a solution for preselected values of x. We start at a specified initial point (x_0, y_0) on a solution curve and proceed to calculate in a step-by-step fashion a sequence of points $(x_1, y_1), (x_2, y_2), \ldots, (x_n, y_n)$ whose y-coordinates y_i approximate the y-coordinates $y(x_i)$ of points $(x_1, y(x_1)), (x_2, y(x_2)), \ldots, (x_n, y(x_n))$ that lie on the graph of the usually unknown solution $y(x)$. By taking the x-coordinates close together (that is, for small values of h) and by joining the points (x_1, y_1), $(x_2, y_2), \ldots, (x_n, y_n)$ with short line segments, we obtain a polygonal curve whose qualitative characteristics we hope are close to those of an actual solution curve. Drawing curves is something that is well suited to a computer. A computer program written to either implement a numerical method or render a visual representation of an approximate solution curve fitting the numerical data produced by this method is referred to as a **numerical solver.** Many different numerical solvers are commercially available, either embedded in a larger software package, such as a computer

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

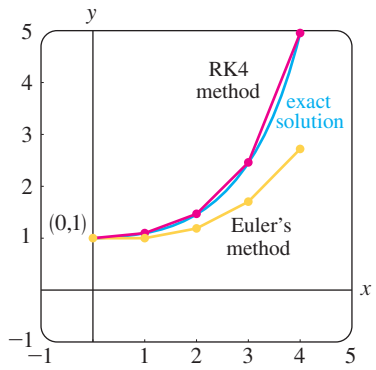


FIGURE 2.6.3 Comparison of the Runge-Kutta (RK4) and Euler methods

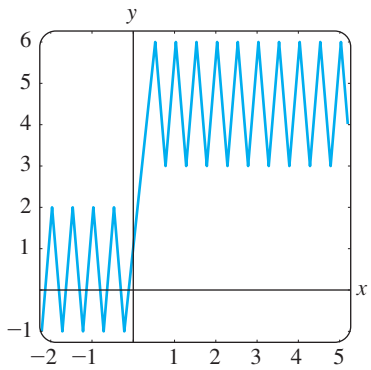


FIGURE 2.6.4 A not-very helpful numerical solution curve

algebra system, or provided as a stand-alone package. Some software packages simply plot the generated numerical approximations, whereas others generate hard numerical data as well as the corresponding approximate or **numerical solution curves.** By way of illustration of the connect-the-dots nature of the graphs produced by a numerical solver, the two colored polygonal graphs in Figure 2.6.3 are the numerical solution curves for the initial-value problem $y' = 0.2xy$, $y(0) = 1$ on the interval $[0, 4]$ obtained from Euler's method and the RK4 method using the step size $h = 1$. The blue smooth curve is the graph of the exact solution $y = e^{0.1x^2}$ of the IVP. Notice in Figure 2.6.3 that, even with the ridiculously large step size of $h = 1$, the RK4 method produces the more believable "solution curve." The numerical solution curve obtained from the RK4 method is indistinguishable from the actual solution curve on the interval $[0, 4]$ when a more typical step size of $h = 0.1$ is used.

Using a Numerical Solver Knowledge of the various numerical methods is not necessary in order to use a numerical solver. A solver usually requires that the differential equation be expressed in normal form $dy/dx = f(x, y)$. Numerical solvers that generate only curves usually require that you supply $f(x, y)$ and the initial data x_0 and y_0 and specify the desired numerical method. If the idea is to approximate the numerical value of $y(a)$, then a solver may additionally require that you state a value for h or, equivalently, give the number of steps that you want to take to get from $x = x_0$ to $x = a$. For example, if we wanted to approximate $y(4)$ for the IVP illustrated in Figure 2.6.3, then, starting at $x = 0$ it would take four steps to reach $x = 4$ with a step size of $h = 1$; 40 steps is equivalent to a step size of $h = 0.1$. Although we will not delve here into the many problems that one can encounter when attempting to approximate mathematical quantities, you should at least be aware of the fact that a numerical solver may break down near certain points or give an incomplete or misleading picture when applied to some first-order differential equations in the normal form. Figure 2.6.4 illustrates the graph obtained by applying Euler's method to a certain first-order initial-value problem $dy/dx = f(x, y)$, $y(0) = 1$. Equivalent results were obtained using three different commercial numerical solvers, yet the graph is hardly a plausible solution curve. (Why?) There are several avenues of recourse when a numerical solver has difficulties; three of the more obvious are decrease the step size, use another numerical method, and try a different numerical solver.

EXERCISES 2.6

Answers to selected odd-numbered problems begin on page ANS-3.

In Problems 1 and 2 use Euler's method to obtain a four-decimal approximation of the indicated value. Carry out the recursion of (3) by hand, first using $h = 0.1$ and then using $h = 0.05$.

1. $y' = 2x - 3y + 1, y(1) = 5;\quad y(1.2)$

2. $y' = x + y^2, y(0) = 0;\quad y(0.2)$

In Problems 3 and 4 use Euler's method to obtain a four-decimal approximation of the indicated value. First use $h = 0.1$ and then use $h = 0.05$. Find an explicit solution for each initial-value problem and then construct tables similar to Tables 2.6.3 and 2.6.4.

3. $y' = y, y(0) = 1;\quad y(1.0)$

4. $y' = 2xy, y(1) = 1;\quad y(1.5)$

In Problems 5–10 use a numerical solver and Euler's method to obtain a four-decimal approximation of the indicated value. First use $h = 0.1$ and then use $h = 0.05$.

5. $y' = e^{-y}, y(0) = 0;\quad y(0.5)$

6. $y' = x^2 + y^2, y(0) = 1;\quad y(0.5)$

7. $y' = (x - y)^2, y(0) = 0.5;\quad y(0.5)$

8. $y' = xy + \sqrt{y}, y(0) = 1;\quad y(0.5)$

9. $y' = xy^2 - \dfrac{y}{x}, y(1) = 1;\quad y(1.5)$

10. $y' = y - y^2, y(0) = 0.5;\quad y(0.5)$

In Problems 11 and 12 use a numerical solver to obtain a numerical solution curve for the given initial-value problem. First use Euler's method and then the RK4 method. Use

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

$h = 0.25$ in each case. Superimpose both solution curves on the same coordinate axes. If possible, use a different color for each curve. Repeat, using $h = 0.1$ and $h = 0.05$.

11. $y' = 2(\cos x)y, \quad y(0) = 1$

12. $y' = y(10 - 2y), \quad y(0) = 1$

Discussion Problems

13. Use a numerical solver and Euler's method to approximate $y(1.0)$, where $y(x)$ is the solution to $y' = 2xy^2$, $y(0) = 1$. First use $h = 0.1$ and then use $h = 0.05$. Repeat, using the RK4 method. Discuss what might cause the approximations to $y(1.0)$ to differ so greatly.

Computer Lab Assignments

14. **(a)** Use a numerical solver and the RK4 method to graph the solution of the initial-value problem $y' = -2xy + 1$, $y(0) = 0$.

(b) Solve the initial-value problem by one of the analytic procedures developed earlier in this chapter.

(c) Use the analytic solution $y(x)$ found in part (b) and a CAS to find the coordinates of all relative extrema.

CHAPTER 2 IN REVIEW

Answers to selected odd-numbered problems begin on page ANS-3.

Answer Problems 1–12 without referring back to the text. Fill in the blanks or answer true or false.

1. The linear DE, $y' - ky = A$, where k and A are constants, is autonomous. The critical point _____ of the equation is a(n) _____ (attractor or repeller) for $k > 0$ and a(n) _____ (attractor or repeller) for k 0.

2. The initial-value problem $x\dfrac{dy}{dx} - 4y = 0$, $y(0) = k$, has an infinite number of solutions for $k =$ _____ and no solution for $k =$ _____.

3. The linear DE, $y' + k_1 y = k_2$, where k_1 and k_2 are nonzero constants, always possesses a constant solution. _____

4. The linear DE, $a_1(x)y' + a_0(x)y = 0$ is also separable. _____

5. An example of a nonlinear third-order differential equation in normal form is _____.

6. The first-order DE $\dfrac{dr}{d\theta} = r\theta + r + \theta + 1$ is not separable. _____

7. Every autonomous DE $dy/dx = f(y)$ is separable. _____

8. By inspection, two solutions of the differential equation $y' + |y| = 2$ are _____.

9. If $y' = e^x y$, then $y =$ _____.

10. If a differentiable function $y(x)$ satisfies $y' = |x|$, $y(-1) = 2$, then $y(x) =$ _____.

11. $y = e^{\cos x}\displaystyle\int_0^x te^{-\cos t}\,dt$ is a solution of the linear first-order differential equation _____.

12. An example of an autonomous linear first-order DE with a single critical point -3 is _____, whereas an autonomous nonlinear first-order DE with a single critical point -3 is _____.

In Problems 13 and 14 construct an autonomous first-order differential equation $dy/dx = f(y)$ whose phase portrait is consistent with the given figure.

13.

FIGURE 2.R.1 Graph for Problem 13

14.

FIGURE 2.R.2 Graph for Problem 14

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

15. The number 0 is a critical point of the autonomous differential equation $dx/dt = x^n$, where n is a positive integer. For what values of n is 0 asymptotically stable? Semi-stable? Unstable? Repeat for the differential equation $dx/dt = -x^n$.

16. Consider the differential equation $dP/dt = f(P)$, where

$$f(P) = -0.5P^3 - 1.7P + 3.4.$$

The function $f(P)$ has one real zero, as shown in Figure 2.R.3. Without attempting to solve the differential equation, estimate the value of $\lim_{t\to\infty} P(t)$.

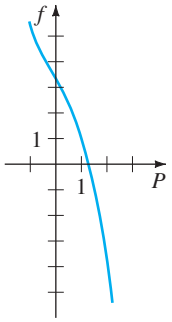


FIGURE 2.R.3 Graph for Problem 16

17. Figure 2.R.4 is a portion of a direction field of a differential equation $dy/dx = f(x, y)$. By hand, sketch two different solution curves—one that is tangent to the lineal element shown in black and one that is tangent to the lineal element shown in red.

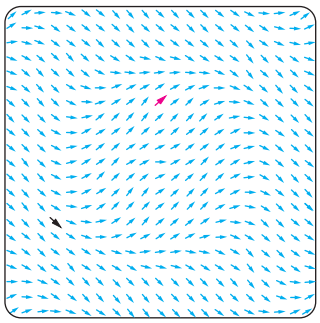


FIGURE 2.R.4 Portion of a direction field for Problem 17

18. Classify each differential equation as separable, exact, linear, homogeneous, or Bernoulli. Some equations may be more than one kind. Do not solve.

(a) $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{x - y}{x}$ **(b)** $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{1}{y - x}$

(c) $(x + 1)\dfrac{dy}{dx} = -y + 10$ **(d)** $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{1}{x(x - y)}$

(e) $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{y^2 + y}{x^2 + x}$ **(f)** $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 5y + y^2$

(g) $y\,dx = (y - xy^2)\,dy$ **(h)** $x\dfrac{dy}{dx} = ye^{x/y} - x$

(i) $xy\,y' + y^2 = 2x$ **(j)** $2xy\,y' + y^2 = 2x^2$

(k) $y\,dx + x\,dy = 0$

(l) $\left(x^2 + \dfrac{2y}{x}\right.\quad dx = (3 - \ln x^2)\,dy$

(m) $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{x}{y} + \dfrac{y}{x} + 1$ **(n)** $\dfrac{y}{x^2}\dfrac{dy}{dx} + e^{2x^3+y^2} = 0$

In Problems 19–26 solve the given differential equation.

19. $(y^2 + 1)\,dx = y\sec^2 x\,dy$

20. $y(\ln x - \ln y)\,dx = (x\ln x - x\ln y - y)\,dy$

21. $(6x + 1)y^2\dfrac{dy}{dx} + 3x^2 + 2y^3 = 0$

22. $\dfrac{dx}{dy} = -\dfrac{4y^2 + 6xy}{3y^2 + 2x}$

23. $t\dfrac{dQ}{dt} + Q = t^4\ln t$

24. $(2x + y + 1)y' = 1$

25. $(x^2 + 4)\,dy = (2x - 8xy)\,dx$

26. $(2r^2\cos\theta\sin\theta + r\cos\theta)\,d\theta + (4r + \sin\theta - 2r\cos^2\theta)\,dr = 0$

In Problems 27 and 28 solve the given initial-value problem and give the largest interval I on which the solution is defined.

27. $\sin x\dfrac{dy}{dx} + (\cos x)y = 0, \quad y(7\pi/6) = -2$

28. $\dfrac{dy}{dt} + 2(t + 1)y^2 = 0, \quad y(0) = -\frac{1}{8}$

29. **(a)** Without solving, explain why the initial-value problem

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \sqrt{y}, \quad y(x_0) = y_0$$

has no solution for y_0 0.

(b) Solve the initial-value problem in part (a) for $y_0 > 0$ and find the largest interval I on which the solution is defined.

30. **(a)** Find an implicit solution of the initial-value problem

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{y^2 - x^2}{xy}, \quad y(1) = -\sqrt{2}.$$

(b) Find an explicit solution of the problem in part (a) and give the largest interval I over which the solution is defined. A graphing utility may be helpful here.

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

31. Graphs of some members of a family of solutions for a first-order differential equation $dy/dx = f(x, y)$ are shown in Figure 2.R.5. The graphs of two implicit solutions, one that passes through the point $(1, -1)$ and one that passes through $(-1, 3)$, are shown in blue. Reproduce the figure on a piece of paper. With colored pencils trace out the solution curves for the solutions $y = y_1(x)$ and $y = y_2(x)$ defined by the implicit solutions such that $y_1(1) = -1$ and $y_2(-1) = 3$, respectively. Estimate the intervals on which the solutions $y = y_1(x)$ and $y = y_2(x)$ are defined.

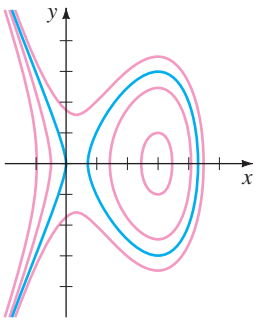


FIGURE 2.R.5 Graph for Problem 31

32. Use Euler's method with step size $h = 0.1$ to approximate $y(1.2)$, where $y(x)$ is a solution of the initial-value problem $y' = 1 + x\sqrt{y}$, $y(1) = 9$.

In Problems 33 and 34 each figure represents a portion of a direction field of an autonomous first-order differential equation $dy/dx = f(y)$. Reproduce the figure on a separate piece of paper and then complete the direction field over the grid. The points of the grid are (mh, nh), where $h = \frac{1}{2}$, m and n integers, $-7 \le m \le 7$, $-7 \le n \le 7$. In each direction field, sketch by hand an approximate solution curve that passes through each of the solid points shown in red. Discuss: Does it appear that the DE possesses critical points in the interval $-3.5 \le y \le 3.5$? If so, classify the critical points as asymptotically stable, unstable, or semi-stable.

33.

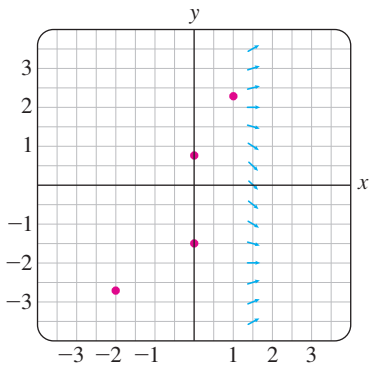


FIGURE 2.R.6 Portion of a direction field for Problem 33

34.

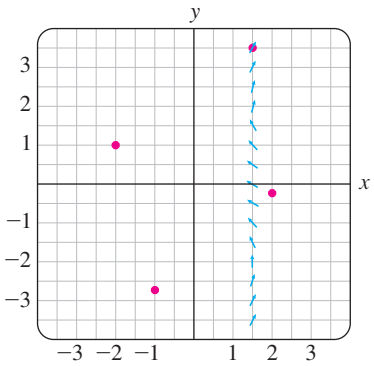


FIGURE 2.R.7 Portion of a direction field for Problem 34

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

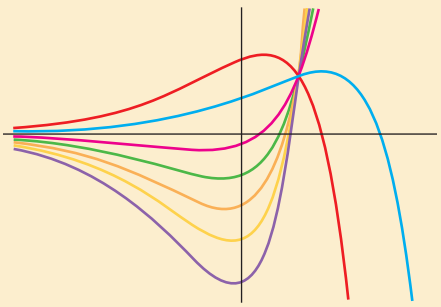
4 Higher-Order Differential Equations

4.1 Preliminary Theory—Linear Equations
- 4.1.1 Initial-Value and Boundary-Value Problems
- 4.1.2 Homogeneous Equations
- 4.1.3 Nonhomogeneous Equations

4.2 Reduction of Order
4.3 Homogeneous Linear Equations with Constant Coefficients
4.4 Undetermined Coefficients—Superposition Approach
4.5 Undetermined Coefficients—Annihilator Approach
4.6 Variation of Parameters
4.7 Cauchy-Euler Equation
4.8 Green's Functions
- 4.8.1 Initial-Value Problems
- 4.8.2 Boundary-Value Problems

4.9 Solving Systems of Linear DEs by Elimination
4.10 Nonlinear Differential Equations

Chapter 4 in Review



We turn now to the solution of ordinary differential equation of order two or higher. In the first seven sections of this chapter we examine the underlying theory and solution methods for certain kinds of linear equations. In the new, but optional, Section 4.8 we build on the material of Section 4.6 to construct Green's functions for solving linear initial-value and boundary-value problems. The elimination method of solving systems of linear equations is introduced in Section 4.9 because this method simply uncouples a system into individual linear equations in each dependent variable. The chapter concludes with a brief examination of nonlinear higher-order equations in Section 4.10.

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

4.1 PRELIMINARY THEORY—LINEAR EQUATIONS

REVIEW MATERIAL

- Reread the *Remarks* at the end of Section 1.1
- Section 2.3 (especially page 57)

INTRODUCTION In Chapter 2 we saw that we could solve a few first-order differential equations by recognizing them as separable, linear, exact, homogeneous, or perhaps Bernoulli equations. Even though the solutions of these equations were in the form of a one-parameter family, this family, with one exception, did not represent the general solution of the differential equation. Only in the case of *linear* first-order differential equations were we able to obtain general solutions, by paying attention to certain continuity conditions imposed on the coefficients. Recall that a **general solution** is a family of solutions defined on some interval I that contains *all* solutions of the DE that are defined on I. Because our primary goal in this chapter is to find general solutions of linear higher-order DEs, we first need to examine some of the theory of linear equations.

4.1.1 INITIAL-VALUE AND BOUNDARY-VALUE PROBLEMS

Initial-Value Problem In Section 1.2 we defined an initial-value problem for a general nth-order differential equation. For a linear differential equation an ***n*th-order initial-value problem** is

$$\begin{aligned} &\textit{Solve:} && a_n(x)\frac{d^n y}{dx^n} + a_{n-1}(x)\frac{d^{n-1}y}{dx^{n-1}} + \cdots + a_1(x)\frac{dy}{dx} + a_0(x)y = g(x) \\ &\textit{Subject to:} && y(x_0) = y_0,\quad y'(x_0) = y_1, \ldots, \quad y^{(n-1)}(x_0) = y_{n-1}. \end{aligned} \tag{1}$$

Recall that for a problem such as this one we seek a function defined on some interval I, containing x_0, that satisfies the differential equation and the n initial conditions specified at x_0: $y(x_0) = y_0, y'(x_0) = y_1, \ldots, y^{(n-1)}(x_0) = y_{n-1}$. We have already seen that in the case of a second-order initial-value problem a solution curve must pass through the point (x_0, y_0) and have slope y_1 at this point.

Existence and Uniqueness In Section 1.2 we stated a theorem that gave conditions under which the existence and uniqueness of a solution of a first-order initial-value problem were guaranteed. The theorem that follows gives sufficient conditions for the existence of a unique solution of the problem in (1).

THEOREM 4.1.1 Existence of a Unique Solution

Let $a_n(x), a_{n-1}(x), \ldots, a_1(x), a_0(x)$ and $g(x)$ be continuous on an interval I and let $a_n(x) \neq 0$ for every x in this interval. If $x = x_0$ is any point in this interval, then a solution $y(x)$ of the initial-value problem (1) exists on the interval and is unique.

EXAMPLE 1 Unique Solution of an IVP

The initial-value problem

$$3y''' + 5y'' - y' + 7y = 0, \quad y(1) = 0, \quad y'(1) = 0, \quad y''(1) = 0$$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

possesses the trivial solution $y = 0$. Because the third-order equation is linear with constant coefficients, it follows that all the conditions of Theorem 4.1.1 are fulfilled. Hence $y = 0$ is the *only* solution on any interval containing $x = 1$.

Ziyad Asaad

EXAMPLE 2 **Unique Solution of an IVP**

You should verify that the function $y = 3e^{2x} + e^{-2x} - 3x$ is a solution of the initial-value problem

$$y'' - 4y = 12x, \quad y(0) = 4, \quad y'(0) = 1.$$

Now the differential equation is linear, the coefficients as well as $g(x) = 12x$ are continuous, and $a_2(x) = 1 \neq 0$ on any interval I containing $x = 0$. We conclude from Theorem 4.1.1 that the given function is the unique solution on I.

The requirements in Theorem 4.1.1 that $a_i(x)$, $i = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, n$ be continuous and $a_n(x) \neq 0$ for every x in I are both important. Specifically, if $a_n(x) = 0$ for some x in the interval, then the solution of a linear initial-value problem may not be unique or even exist. For example, you should verify that the function $y = cx^2 + x + 3$ is a solution of the initial-value problem

$$x^2y'' - 2xy' + 2y = 6, \quad y(0) = 3, \quad y'(0) = 1$$

on the interval $(-\infty, \quad)$ for any choice of the parameter c. In other words, there is no unique solution of the problem. Although most of the conditions of Theorem 4.1.1 are satisfied, the obvious difficulties are that $a_2(x) = x^2$ is zero at $x = 0$ and that the initial conditions are also imposed at $x = 0$.

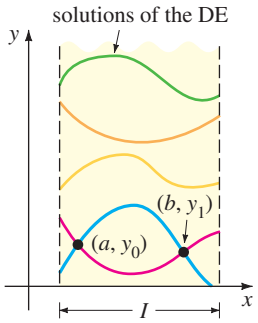


FIGURE 4.1.1 Solution curves of a BVP that pass through two points

Boundary-Value Problem Another type of problem consists of solving a linear differential equation of order two or greater in which the dependent variable y or its derivatives are specified at *different points*. A problem such as

$$\text{Solve:} \quad a_2(x)\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + a_1(x)\frac{dy}{dx} + a_0(x)y = g(x)$$

$$\text{Subject to:} \quad y(a) = y_0, \quad y(b) = y_1$$

is called a **boundary-value problem (BVP).** The prescribed values $y(a) = y_0$ and $y(b) = y_1$ are called **boundary conditions.** A solution of the foregoing problem is a function satisfying the differential equation on some interval I, containing a and b, whose graph passes through the two points (a, y_0) and (b, y_1). See Figure 4.1.1.

For a second-order differential equation other pairs of boundary conditions could be

$$y'(a) = y_0, \quad y(b) = y_1$$
$$y(a) = y_0, \quad y'(b) = y_1$$
$$y'(a) = y_0, \quad y'(b) = y_1,$$

where y_0 and y_1 denote arbitrary constants. These three pairs of conditions are just special cases of the general boundary conditions

$$\alpha_1 y(a) + \beta_1 y'(a) = \ _1$$
$$\alpha_2 y(b) + \beta_2 y'(b) = \ _2.$$

The next example shows that even when the conditions of Theorem 4.1.1 are fulfilled, a boundary-value problem may have several solutions (as suggested in Figure 4.1.1), a unique solution, or no solution at all.

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

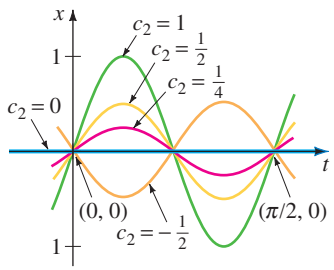


FIGURE 4.1.2 Solution curves for BVP in part (a) of Example 3

EXAMPLE 3 **A BVP Can Have Many, One, or No Solutions**

In Example 7 of Section 1.1 we saw that the two-parameter family of solutions of the differential equation $x'' + 16x = 0$ is

$$x = c_1 \cos 4t + c_2 \sin 4t. \tag{2}$$

(a) Suppose we now wish to determine the solution of the equation that further satisfies the boundary conditions $x(0) = 0$, $x(\pi/2) = 0$. Observe that the first condition $0 = c_1 \cos 0 + c_2 \sin 0$ implies that $c_1 = 0$, so $x = c_2 \sin 4t$. But when $t = \pi/2$, $0 = c_2 \sin 2\pi$ is satisfied for any choice of c_2, since $\sin 2\pi = 0$. Hence the boundary-value problem

$$x'' + 16x = 0, \quad x(0) = 0, \quad x\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right) = 0 \tag{3}$$

has infinitely many solutions. Figure 4.1.2 shows the graphs of some of the members of the one-parameter family $x = c_2 \sin 4t$ that pass through the two points $(0, 0)$ and $(\pi/2, 0)$.

(b) If the boundary-value problem in (3) is changed to

$$x'' + 16x = 0, \quad x(0) = 0, \quad x\left(\frac{\pi}{8}\right) = 0, \tag{4}$$

then $x(0) = 0$ still requires $c_1 = 0$ in the solution (2). But applying $x(\pi/8) = 0$ to $x = c_2 \sin 4t$ demands that $0 = c_2 \sin(\pi/2) = c_2 \cdot 1$. Hence $x = 0$ is a solution of this new boundary-value problem. Indeed, it can be proved that $x = 0$ is the *only* solution of (4).

(c) Finally, if we change the problem to

$$x'' + 16x = 0, \quad x(0) = 0, \quad x\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right) = 1, \tag{5}$$

we find again from $x(0) = 0$ that $c_1 = 0$, but applying $x(\pi/2) = 1$ to $x = c_2 \sin 4t$ leads to the contradiction $1 = c_2 \sin 2\pi = c_2 \cdot 0 = 0$. Hence the boundary-value problem (5) has no solution. ☰

4.1.2 HOMOGENEOUS EQUATIONS

A linear nth-order differential equation of the form

$$a_n(x)\frac{d^n y}{dx^n} + a_{n-1}(x)\frac{d^{n-1}y}{dx^{n-1}} + \cdots + a_1(x)\frac{dy}{dx} + a_0(x)y = 0 \tag{6}$$

is said to be **homogeneous,** whereas an equation

$$a_n(x)\frac{d^n y}{dx^n} + a_{n-1}(x)\frac{d^{n-1}y}{dx^{n-1}} + \cdots + a_1(x)\frac{dy}{dx} + a_0(x)y = g(x), \tag{7}$$

with $g(x)$ not identically zero, is said to be **nonhomogeneous.** For example, $2y'' + 3y' - 5y = 0$ is a homogeneous linear second-order differential equation, whereas $x^3y''' + 6y' + 10y = e^x$ is a nonhomogeneous linear third-order differential equation. The word *homogeneous* in this context does not refer to coefficients that are homogeneous functions, as in Section 2.5.

We shall see that to solve a nonhomogeneous linear equation (7), we must first be able to solve the **associated homogeneous equation** (6).

To avoid needless repetition throughout the remainder of this text, we shall, as a matter of course, make the following important assumptions when

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

stating definitions and theorems about linear equations (1). On some common interval I,

Please remember these two assumptions. ▶

- the coefficient functions $a_i(x)$, $i = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, n$ and $g(x)$ are continuous;
- $a_n(x) \neq 0$ for every x in the interval.

Differential Operators In calculus differentiation is often denoted by the capital letter D—that is, $dy/dx = Dy$. The symbol D is called a **differential operator** because it transforms a differentiable function into another function. For example, $D(\cos 4x) = -4 \sin 4x$ and $D(5x^3 - 6x^2) = 15x^2 - 12x$. Higher-order derivatives can be expressed in terms of D in a natural manner:

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right) = \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = D(Dy) = D^2y \qquad \text{and, in general,} \qquad \frac{d^ny}{dx^n} = D^ny,$$

where y represents a sufficiently differentiable function. Polynomial expressions involving D, such as $D + 3$, $D^2 + 3D - 4$, and $5x^3D^3 - 6x^2D^2 + 4xD + 9$, are also differential operators. In general, we define an ***n*th-order differential operator** or **polynomial operator** to be

$$L = a_n(x)D^n + a_{n-1}(x)D^{n-1} + \cdots + a_1(x)D + a_0(x). \tag{8}$$

As a consequence of two basic properties of differentiation, $D(cf(x)) = cDf(x)$, c is a constant, and $D\{f(x) + g(x)\} = Df(x) + Dg(x)$, the differential operator L possesses a linearity property; that is, L operating on a linear combination of two differentiable functions is the same as the linear combination of L operating on the individual functions. In symbols this means that

$$L\{\alpha f(x) + \beta g(x)\} = \alpha L(f(x)) + \beta L(g(x)), \tag{9}$$

where α and β are constants. Because of (9) we say that the nth-order differential operator L is a **linear operator.**

Differential Equations Any linear differential equation can be expressed in terms of the D notation. For example, the differential equation $y'' + 5y' + 6y = 5x - 3$ can be written as $D^2y + 5Dy + 6y = 5x - 3$ or $(D^2 + 5D + 6)y = 5x - 3$. Using (8), we can write the linear nth-order differential equations (6) and (7) compactly as

$$L(y) = 0 \qquad \text{and} \qquad L(y) = g(x),$$

respectively.

Superposition Principle In the next theorem we see that the sum, or **superposition,** of two or more solutions of a homogeneous linear differential equation is also a solution.

THEOREM 4.1.2 Superposition Principle—Homogeneous Equations

Let $y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_k$ be solutions of the homogeneous nth-order differential equation (6) on an interval I. Then the linear combination

$$y = c_1y_1(x) + c_2y_2(x) + \cdots + c_ky_k(x),$$

where the c_i, $i = 1, 2, \ldots, k$ are arbitrary constants, is also a solution on the interval.

PROOF We prove the case $k = 2$. Let L be the differential operator defined in (8), and let $y_1(x)$ and $y_2(x)$ be solutions of the homogeneous equation $L(y) = 0$. If we define $y = c_1y_1(x) + c_2y_2(x)$, then by linearity of L we have

$$L(y) = L\{c_1y_1(x) + c_2y_2(x)\} = c_1\,L(y_1) + c_2\,L(y_2) = c_1 \cdot 0 + c_2 \cdot 0 = 0. \quad \blacksquare$$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

COROLLARIES TO THEOREM 4.1.2

(A) A constant multiple $y = c_1y_1(x)$ of a solution $y_1(x)$ of a homogeneous linear differential equation is also a solution.

(B) A homogeneous linear differential equation always possesses the trivial solution $y = 0$.

EXAMPLE 4 Superposition—Homogeneous DE

The functions $y_1 = x^2$ and $y_2 = x^2 \ln x$ are both solutions of the homogeneous linear equation $x^3y''' - 2xy' + 4y = 0$ on the interval $(0, \quad)$. By the superposition principle the linear combination

$$y = c_1x^2 + c_2x^2 \ln x$$

is also a solution of the equation on the interval.

The function $y = e^{7x}$ is a solution of $y'' - 9y' + 14y = 0$. Because the differential equation is linear and homogeneous, the constant multiple $y = ce^{7x}$ is also a solution. For various values of c we see that $y = 9e^{7x}$, $y = 0$, $y = -\sqrt{5}e^{7x}$, . . . are all solutions of the equation.

Linear Dependence and Linear Independence The next two concepts are basic to the study of linear differential equations.

DEFINITION 4.1.1 Linear Dependence/Independence

A set of functions $f_1(x), f_2(x), \ldots, f_n(x)$ is said to be **linearly dependent** on an interval I if there exist constants $c_1, c_2, \ldots, c_n$, not all zero, such that

$$c_1f_1(x) + c_2f_2(x) + \cdots + c_nf_n(x) = 0$$

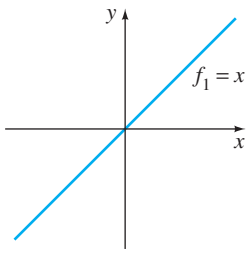
for every x in the interval. If the set of functions is not linearly dependent on the interval, it is said to be **linearly independent.**

In other words, a set of functions is linearly independent on an interval I if the only constants for which

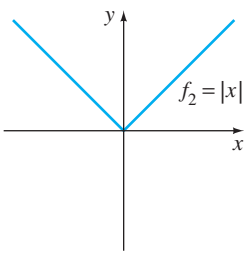
$$c_1f_1(x) + c_2f_2(x) + \cdots + c_nf_n(x) = 0$$

for every x in the interval are $c_1 = c_2 = \cdots = c_n = 0$.

It is easy to understand these definitions for a set consisting of two functions $f_1(x)$ and $f_2(x)$. If the set of functions is linearly dependent on an interval, then there exist constants c_1 and c_2 that are not both zero such that for every x in the interval, $c_1f_1(x) + c_2f_2(x) = 0$. Therefore if we assume that $c_1 \neq 0$, it follows that $f_1(x) = (-c_2/c_1)f_2(x)$; that is, *if a set of two functions is linearly dependent, then one function is simply a constant multiple of the other* . Conversely, if $f_1(x) = c_2f_2(x)$ for some constant c_2, then $(-1) \cdot f_1(x) + c_2f_2(x) = 0$ for every x in the interval. Hence the set of functions is linearly dependent because at least one of the constants (namely, $c_1 = -1$) is not zero. We conclude that *a set of two functions* $f_1(x)$ and $f_2(x)$ *is linearly independent when neither function is a constant multiple of the other* on the interval. For example, the set of functions $f_1(x) = \sin 2x$, $f_2(x) = \sin x \cos x$ is linearly dependent on $(-\infty, \quad)$ because $f_1(x)$ is a constant multiple of $f_2(x)$. Recall from the double-angle formula for the sine that $\sin 2x = 2 \sin x \cos x$. On the other hand, the set of functions $f_1(x) = x$, $f_2(x) = |x|$ is linearly independent on $(-\infty, \quad)$. Inspection of Figure 4.1.3 should convince you that neither function is a constant multiple of the other on the interval.



(a)



(b)

FIGURE 4.1.3 Set consisting of f_1 and f_2 is linearly independent on $(-\infty, \quad)$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

It follows from the preceding discussion that the quotient $f_2(x)/f_1(x)$ is not a constant on an interval on which the set $f_1(x), f_2(x)$ is linearly independent. This little fact will be used in the next section.

EXAMPLE 5 Linearly Dependent Set of Functions

The set of functions $f_1(x) = \cos^2 x$, $f_2(x) = \sin^2 x$, $f_3(x) = \sec^2 x$, $f_4(x) = \tan^2 x$ is linearly dependent on the interval $(-\pi/2, \pi/2)$ because

$$c_1 \cos^2 x + c_2 \sin^2 x + c_3 \sec^2 x + c_4 \tan^2 x = 0$$

when $c_1 = c_2 = 1$, $c_3 = -1$, $c_4 = 1$. We used here $\cos^2 x + \sin^2 x = 1$ and $1 + \tan^2 x = \sec^2 x$.

A set of functions $f_1(x), f_2(x), \ldots, f_n(x)$ is linearly dependent on an interval if at least one function can be expressed as a linear combination of the remaining functions.

EXAMPLE 6 Linearly Dependent Set of Functions

The set of functions $f_1(x) = \sqrt{x} + 5, f_2(x) = \sqrt{x} + 5x, f_3(x) = x - 1, f_4(x) = x^2$ is linearly dependent on the interval $(0, \quad)$ because f_2 can be written as a linear combination of f_1, f_3, and f_4. Observe that

$$f_2(x) = 1 \cdot f_1(x) + 5 \cdot f_3(x) + 0 \cdot f_4(x)$$

for every x in the interval $(0, \quad)$.

Solutions of Differential Equations We are primarily interested in linearly independent functions or, more to the point, linearly independent *solutions* of a linear differential equation. Although we could always appeal directly to Definition 4.1.1, it turns out that the question of whether the set of n solutions $y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_n$ of a homogeneous linear nth-order differential equation (6) is linearly independent can be settled somewhat mechanically by using a determinant.

DEFINITION 4.1.2 Wronskian

Suppose each of the functions $f_1(x), f_2(x), \ldots, f_n(x)$ possesses at least $n - 1$ derivatives. The determinant

$$W(f_1, f_2, \ldots, f_n) = \begin{vmatrix} f_1 & f_2 & \cdots & f_n \\ f_1' & f_2' & \cdots & f_n' \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ f_1^{(n-1)} & f_2^{(n-1)} & \cdots & f_n^{(n-1)} \end{vmatrix},$$

where the primes denote derivatives, is called the **Wronskian** of the functions.

THEOREM 4.1.3 Criterion for Linearly Independent Solutions

Let $y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_n$ be n solutions of the homogeneous linear nth-order differential equation (6) on an interval I. Then the set of solutions is **linearly independent** on I if and only if $W(y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_n) \neq 0$ for every x in the interval.

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

It follows from Theorem 4.1.3 that when $y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_n$ are n solutions of (6) on an interval I, the Wronskian $W(y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_n)$ is either identically zero or never zero on the interval.

A set of n linearly independent solutions of a homogeneous linear nth-order differential equation is given a special name.

DEFINITION 4.1.3 Fundamental Set of Solutions

Any set $y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_n$ of n linearly independent solutions of the homogeneous linear nth-order differential equation (6) on an interval I is said to be a **fundamental set of solutions** on the interval.

The basic question of whether a fundamental set of solutions exists for a linear equation is answered in the next theorem.

THEOREM 4.1.4 Existence of a Fundamental Set

There exists a fundamental set of solutions for the homogeneous linear nth-order differential equation (6) on an interval I.

Analogous to the fact that any vector in three dimensions can be expressed as a linear combination of the *linearly independent* vectors **i, j, k,** any solution of an nth-order homogeneous linear differential equation on an interval I can be expressed as a linear combination of n linearly independent solutions on I. In other words, n linearly independent solutions $y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_n$ are the basic building blocks for the general solution of the equation.

THEOREM 4.1.5 General Solution—Homogeneous Equations

Let $y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_n$ be a fundamental set of solutions of the homogeneous linear nth-order differential equation (6) on an interval I. Then the **general solution** of the equation on the interval is

$$y = c_1y_1(x) + c_2y_2(x) + \cdots + c_ny_n(x),$$

where c_i, $i = 1, 2, \ldots, n$ are arbitrary constants.

Theorem 4.1.5 states that if $Y(x)$ is any solution of (6) on the interval, then constants $C_1, C_2, \ldots, C_n$ can always be found so that

$$Y(x) = C_1y_1(x) + C_2y_2(x) + \cdots + C_ny_n(x).$$

We will prove the case when $n = 2$.

PROOF Let Y be a solution and let y_1 and y_2 be linearly independent solutions of $a_2y'' + a_1y' + a_0y = 0$ on an interval I. Suppose that $x = t$ is a point in I for which $W(y_1(t), y_2(t)) \neq 0$. Suppose also that $Y(t) = k_1$ and $Y'(t) = k_2$. If we now examine the equations

$$C_1y_1(t) + C_2y_2(t) = k_1$$
$$C_1y_1'(t) + C_2y_2'(t) = k_2,$$

it follows that we can determine C_1 and C_2 uniquely, provided that the determinant of the coefficients satisfies

$$\begin{vmatrix} y_1(t) & y_2(t) \\ y_1'(t) & y_2'(t) \end{vmatrix} \neq 0.$$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

But this determinant is simply the Wronskian evaluated at $x = t$, and by assumption, $W \neq 0$. If we define $G(x) = C_1y_1(x) + C_2y_2(x)$, we observe that $G(x)$ satisfies the differential equation since it is a superposition of two known solutions; $G(x)$ satisfies the initial conditions

$$G(t) = C_1y_1(t) + C_2y_2(t) = k_1 \qquad \text{and} \qquad G'(t) = C_1y_1'(t) + C_2y_2'(t) = k_2;$$

and $Y(x)$ satisfies the *same* linear equation and the *same* initial conditions. Because the solution of this linear initial-value problem is unique (Theorem 4.1.1), we have $Y(x) = G(x)$ or $Y(x) = C_1y_1(x) + C_2y_2(x)$.

EXAMPLE 7 General Solution of a Homogeneous DE

The functions $y_1 = e^{3x}$ and $y_2 = e^{-3x}$ are both solutions of the homogeneous linear equation $y'' - 9y = 0$ on the interval $(-\infty, \quad)$. By inspection the solutions are linearly independent on the x-axis. This fact can be corroborated by observing that the Wronskian

$$W(e^{3x}, e^{-3x}) = \begin{vmatrix} e^{3x} & e^{-3x} \\ 3e^{3x} & -3e^{-3x} \end{vmatrix} = -6 \neq 0$$

for every x. We conclude that y_1 and y_2 form a fundamental set of solutions, and consequently, $y = c_1e^{3x} + c_2e^{-3x}$ is the general solution of the equation on the interval.

EXAMPLE 8 A Solution Obtained from a General Solution

The function $y = 4\sinh 3x - 5e^{-3x}$ is a solution of the differential equation in Example 7. (Verify this.) In view of Theorem 4.1.5 we must be able to obtain this solution from the general solution $y = c_1e^{3x} + c_2e^{-3x}$. Observe that if we choose $c_1 = 2$ and $c_2 = -7$, then $y = 2e^{3x} - 7e^{-3x}$ can be rewritten as

$$y = 2e^{3x} - 2e^{-3x} - 5e^{-3x} = 4\left(\frac{e^{3x} - e^{-3x}}{2}\right) - 5e^{-3x}.$$

The last expression is recognized as $y = 4\sinh 3x - 5e^{-3x}$.

EXAMPLE 9 General Solution of a Homogeneous DE

The functions $y_1 = e^x$, $y_2 = e^{2x}$, and $y_3 = e^{3x}$ satisfy the third-order equation $y''' - 6y'' + 11y' - 6y = 0$. Since

$$W(e^x, e^{2x}, e^{3x}) = \begin{vmatrix} e^x & e^{2x} & e^{3x} \\ e^x & 2e^{2x} & 3e^{3x} \\ e^x & 4e^{2x} & 9e^{3x} \end{vmatrix} = 2e^{6x} \neq 0$$

for every real value of x, the functions y_1, y_2, and y_3 form a fundamental set of solutions on $(-\infty, \quad)$. We conclude that $y = c_1e^x + c_2e^{2x} + c_3e^{3x}$ is the general solution of the differential equation on the interval.

4.1.3 NONHOMOGENEOUS EQUATIONS

Any function y_p, free of arbitrary parameters, that satisfies (7) is said to be a **particular solution** or **particular integral** of the equation. For example, it is a straightforward task to show that the constant function $y_p = 3$ is a particular solution of the nonhomogeneous equation $y'' + 9y = 27$.

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Now if $y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_k$ are solutions of (6) on an interval I and y_p is any particular solution of (7) on I, then the linear combination

$$y = c_1y_1(x) + c_2y_2(x) + \cdots + c_ky_k(x) + y_p \tag{10}$$

is also a solution of the nonhomogeneous equation (7). If you think about it, this makes sense, because the linear combination $c_1y_1(x) + c_2y_2(x) + \cdots + c_ky_k(x)$ is transformed into 0 by the operator $L = a_nD^n + a_{n-1}D^{n-1} + \cdots + a_1D + a_0$, whereas y_p is transformed into $g(x)$. If we use $k = n$ linearly independent solutions of the nth-order equation (6), then the expression in (10) becomes the general solution of (7).

THEOREM 4.1.6 General Solution—Nonhomogeneous Equations

Let y_p be any particular solution of the nonhomogeneous linear nth-order differential equation (7) on an interval I, and let $y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_n$ be a fundamental set of solutions of the associated homogeneous differential equation (6) on I. Then the **general solution** of the equation on the interval is

$$y = c_1y_1(x) + c_2y_2(x) + \cdots + c_ny_n(x) + y_p,$$

where the c_i, $i = 1, 2, \ldots, n$ are arbitrary constants.

PROOF Let L be the differential operator defined in (8) and let $Y(x)$ and $y_p(x)$ be particular solutions of the nonhomogeneous equation $L(y) = g(x)$. If we define $u(x) = Y(x) - y_p(x)$, then by linearity of L we have

$$L(u) = L\{Y(x) - y_p(x)\} = L(Y(x)) - L(y_p(x)) = g(x) - g(x) = 0.$$

This shows that $u(x)$ is a solution of the homogeneous equation $L(y) = 0$. Hence by Theorem 4.1.5, $u(x) = c_1y_1(x) + c_2y_2(x) + \cdots + c_ny_n(x)$, and so

$$Y(x) - y_p(x) = c_1y_1(x) + c_2y_2(x) + \cdots + c_ny_n(x)$$

or

$$Y(x) = c_1y_1(x) + c_2y_2(x) + \cdots + c_ny_n(x) + y_p(x). \qquad \equiv$$

Complementary Function We see in Theorem 4.1.6 that the general solution of a nonhomogeneous linear equation consists of the sum of two functions:

$$y = c_1y_1(x) + c_2y_2(x) + \cdots + c_ny_n(x) + y_p(x) = y_c(x) + y_p(x).$$

The linear combination $y_c(x) = c_1y_1(x) + c_2y_2(x) + \cdots + c_ny_n(x)$, which is the general solution of (6), is called the **complementary function** for equation (7). In other words, to solve a nonhomogeneous linear differential equation, we first solve the associated homogeneous equation and then find any particular solution of the nonhomogeneous equation. The general solution of the nonhomogeneous equation is then

$$y = \textit{complementary function} + \textit{any particular solution}$$
$$= y_c + y_p.$$

EXAMPLE 10 General Solution of a Nonhomogeneous DE

By substitution the function $y_p = -\frac{11}{12} - \frac{1}{2}x$ is readily shown to be a particular solution of the nonhomogeneous equation

$$y''' - 6y'' + 11y' - 6y = 3x. \tag{11}$$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To write the general solution of (11), we must also be able to solve the associated homogeneous equation

$$y''' - 6y'' + 11y' - 6y = 0.$$

But in Example 9 we saw that the general solution of this latter equation on the interval $(-\infty, \quad)$ was $y_c = c_1e^x + c_2e^{2x} + c_3e^{3x}$. Hence the general solution of (11) on the interval is

$$y = y_c + y_p = c_1e^x + c_2e^{2x} + c_3e^{3x} - \frac{11}{12} - \frac{1}{2}x.$$

Another Superposition Principle The last theorem of this discussion will be useful in Section 4.4 when we consider a method for finding particular solutions of nonhomogeneous equations.

THEOREM 4.1.7 Superposition Principle—Nonhomogeneous Equations

Let $y_{p_1}, y_{p_2}, \ldots, y_{p_k}$ be k particular solutions of the nonhomogeneous linear nth-order differential equation (7) on an interval I corresponding, in turn, to k distinct functions $g_1, g_2, \ldots, g_k$. That is, suppose y_{p_i} denotes a particular solution of the corresponding differential equation

$$a_n(x)y^{(n)} + a_{n-1}(x)y^{(n-1)} + \cdots + a_1(x)y' + a_0(x)y = g_i(x), \quad (12)$$

where $i = 1, 2, \ldots, k$. Then

$$y_p = y_{p_1}(x) + y_{p_2}(x) + \cdots + y_{p_k}(x) \quad (13)$$

is a particular solution of

$$a_n(x)y^{(n)} + a_{n-1}(x)y^{(n-1)} + \cdots + a_1(x)y' + a_0(x)y = g_1(x) + g_2(x) + \cdots + g_k(x). \quad (14)$$

PROOF We prove the case $k = 2$. Let L be the differential operator defined in (8) and let $y_{p_1}(x)$ and $y_{p_2}(x)$ be particular solutions of the nonhomogeneous equations $L(y) = g_1(x)$ and $L(y) = g_2(x)$, respectively. If we define $y_p = y_{p_1}(x) + y_{p_2}(x)$, we want to show that y_p is a particular solution of $L(y) = g_1(x) + g_2(x)$. The result follows again by the linearity of the operator L:

$$L(y_p) = L\{y_{p_1}(x) + y_{p_2}(x)\} = L(y_{p_1}(x)) + L(y_{p_2}(x)) = g_1(x) + g_2(x).$$

EXAMPLE 11 Superposition—Nonhomogeneous DE

You should verify that

$y_{p_1} = -4x^2$ is a particular solution of $y'' - 3y' + 4y = -16x^2 + 24x - 8$,

$y_{p_2} = e^{2x}$ is a particular solution of $y'' - 3y' + 4y = 2e^{2x}$,

$y_{p_3} = xe^x$ is a particular solution of $y'' - 3y' + 4y = 2xe^x - e^x$.

It follows from (13) of Theorem 4.1.7 that the superposition of y_{p_1}, y_{p_2}, and y_{p_3},

$$y = y_{p_1} + y_{p_2} + y_{p_3} = -4x^2 + e^{2x} + xe^x,$$

is a solution of

$$y'' - 3y' + 4y = \underbrace{-16x^2 + 24x - 8}_{g_1(x)} + \underbrace{2e^{2x}}_{g_2(x)} + \underbrace{2xe^x - e^x}_{g_3(x)}.$$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Note If the y_{p_i} are particular solutions of (12) for $i = 1, 2, \ldots, k$, then the linear combination

$$y_p = c_1 y_{p_1} + c_2 y_{p_2} + \cdots + c_k y_{p_k},$$

where the c_i are constants, is also a particular solution of (14) when the right-hand member of the equation is the linear combination

$$c_1 g_1(x) + c_2 g_2(x) + \cdots + c_k g_k(x).$$

Before we actually start solving homogeneous and nonhomogeneous linear differential equations, we need one additional bit of theory, which is presented in the next section.

REMARKS

This remark is a continuation of the brief discussion of dynamical systems given at the end of Section 1.3.

A dynamical system whose rule or mathematical model is a linear nth-order differential equation

$$a_n(t)y^{(n)} + a_{n-1}(t)y^{(n-1)} + \cdots + a_1(t)y' + a_0(t)y = g(t)$$

is said to be an nth-order **linear system.** The n time-dependent functions $y(t)$, $y'(t), \ldots, y^{(n-1)}(t)$ are the **state variables** of the system. Recall that their values at some time t give the **state of the system.** The function g is variously called the **input function, forcing function,** or **excitation function.** A solution $y(t)$ of the differential equation is said to be the **output** or **response of the system.** Under the conditions stated in Theorem 4.1.1, the output or response $y(t)$ is uniquely determined by the input and the state of the system prescribed at a time t_0—that is, by the initial conditions $y(t_0), y'(t_0), \ldots, y^{(n-1)}(t_0)$.

For a dynamical system to be a linear system, it is necessary that the superposition principle (Theorem 4.1.7) holds in the system; that is, the response of the system to a superposition of inputs is a superposition of outputs. We have already examined some simple linear systems in Section 3.1 (linear first-order equations); in Section 5.1 we examine linear systems in which the mathematical models are second-order differential equations.

EXERCISES 4.1

Answers to selected odd-numbered problems begin on page ANS-4.

4.1.1 INITIAL-VALUE AND BOUNDARY-VALUE PROBLEMS

In Problems 1–4 the given family of functions is the general solution of the differential equation on the indicated interval. Find a member of the family that is a solution of the initial-value problem.

1. $y = c_1 e^x + c_2 e^{-x}$, $(-\infty, \quad)$;
$y'' - y = 0, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 1$

2. $y = c_1 e^{4x} + c_2 e^{-x}$, $(-\infty, \quad)$;
$y'' - 3y' - 4y = 0, \quad y(0) = 1, \quad y'(0) = 2$

3. $y = c_1 x + c_2 x \ln x$, $(0, \quad)$;
$x^2 y'' - xy' + y = 0, \quad y(1) = 3, \quad y'(1) = -1$

4. $y = c_1 + c_2 \cos x + c_3 \sin x$, $(-\infty, \quad)$;
$y''' + y' = 0, \quad y(\pi) = 0, \quad y'(\pi) = 2, \quad y''(\pi) = -1$

5. Given that $y = c_1 + c_2 x^2$ is a two-parameter family of solutions of $xy'' - y' = 0$ on the interval $(-\infty, \quad)$, show that constants c_1 and c_2 cannot be found so that a member of the family satisfies the initial conditions $y(0) = 0$, $y'(0) = 1$. Explain why this does not violate Theorem 4.1.1.

6. Find two members of the family of solutions in Problem 5 that satisfy the initial conditions $y(0) = 0$, $y'(0) = 0$.

7. Given that $x(t) = c_1 \cos \omega t + c_2 \sin \omega t$ is the general solution of $x'' + \omega^2 x = 0$ on the interval $(-\infty, \quad)$, show that a solution satisfying the initial conditions $x(0) = x_0, x'(0) = x_1$ is given by

$$x(t) = x_0 \cos \omega t + \frac{x_1}{\omega} \sin \omega t.$$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

8. Use the general solution of $x'' + \omega^2 x = 0$ given in Problem 7 to show that a solution satisfying the initial conditions $x(t_0) = x_0, x'(t_0) = x_1$ is the solution given in Problem 7 shifted by an amount t_0:

$$x(t) = x_0 \cos \omega(t - t_0) + \frac{x_1}{\omega} \sin \omega(t - t_0).$$

In Problems 9 and 10 find an interval centered about $x = 0$ for which the given initial-value problem has a unique solution.

9. $(x - 2)y'' + 3y = x, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 1$

10. $y'' + (\tan x)y = e^x, \quad y(0) = 1, \quad y'(0) = 0$

11. **(a)** Use the family in Problem 1 to find a solution of $y'' - y = 0$ that satisfies the boundary conditions $y(0) = 0, y(1) = 1$.

(b) The DE in part (a) has the alternative general solution $y = c_3 \cosh x + c_4 \sinh x$ on $(-\infty, \quad)$. Use this family to find a solution that satisfies the boundary conditions in part (a).

(c) Show that the solutions in parts (a) and (b) are equivalent

12. Use the family in Problem 5 to find a solution of $xy'' - y' = 0$ that satisfies the boundary conditions $y(0) = 1, y'(1) = 6$.

In Problems 13 and 14 the given two-parameter family is a solution of the indicated differential equation on the interval $(-\infty, \quad)$. Determine whether a member of the family can be found that satisfies the boundary conditions.

13. $y = c_1 e^x \cos x + c_2 e^x \sin x; \quad y'' - 2y' + 2y = 0$

(a) $y(0) = 1, \quad y'(\pi) = 0$

(b) $y(0) = 1, \quad y(\pi) = -1$

(c) $y(0) = 1, \quad y(\pi/2) = 1$

(d) $y(0) = 0, \quad y(\pi) = 0.$

14. $y = c_1 x^2 + c_2 x^4 + 3; \quad x^2 y'' - 5xy' + 8y = 24$

(a) $y(-1) = 0, \quad y(1) = 4$

(b) $y(0) = 1, \quad y(1) = 2$

(c) $y(0) = 3, \quad y(1) = 0$

(d) $y(1) = 3, \quad y(2) = 15$

4.1.2 HOMOGENEOUS EQUATIONS

In Problems 15–22 determine whether the given set of functions is linearly independent on the interval $(-\infty, \quad)$.

15. $f_1(x) = x, \quad f_2(x) = x^2, \quad f_3(x) = 4x - 3x^2$

16. $f_1(x) = 0, \quad f_2(x) = x, \quad f_3(x) = e^x$

17. $f_1(x) = 5, \quad f_2(x) = \cos^2 x, \quad f_3(x) = \sin^2 x$

18. $f_1(x) = \cos 2x, \quad f_2(x) = 1, \quad f_3(x) = \cos^2 x$

19. $f_1(x) = x, \quad f_2(x) = x - 1, \quad f_3(x) = x + 3$

20. $f_1(x) = 2 + x, \quad f_2(x) = 2 + |x|$

21. $f_1(x) = 1 + x, \quad f_2(x) = x, \quad f_3(x) = x^2$

22. $f_1(x) = e^x, \quad f_2(x) = e^{-x}, \quad f_3(x) = \sinh x$

In Problems 23–30 verify that the given functions form a fundamental set of solutions of the differential equation on the indicated interval. Form the general solution.

23. $y'' - y' - 12y = 0; \quad e^{-3x}, e^{4x}, (-\infty, \quad)$

24. $y'' - 4y = 0; \quad \cosh 2x, \sinh 2x, (-\infty, \quad)$

25. $y'' - 2y' + 5y = 0; \quad e^x \cos 2x, e^x \sin 2x, (-\infty, \quad)$

26. $4y'' - 4y' + y = 0; \quad e^{x/2}, xe^{x/2}, (-\infty, \quad)$

27. $x^2 y'' - 6xy' + 12y = 0; \quad x^3, x^4, (0, \quad)$

28. $x^2 y'' + xy' + y = 0; \quad \cos(\ln x), \sin(\ln x), (0, \quad)$

29. $x^3 y''' + 6x^2 y'' + 4xy' - 4y = 0; \quad x, x^{-2}, x^{-2} \ln x, (0, \quad)$

30. $y^{(4)} + y'' = 0; \quad 1, x, \cos x, \sin x, (-\infty, \quad)$

4.1.3 NONHOMOGENEOUS EQUATIONS

In Problems 31–34 verify that the given two-parameter family of functions is the general solution of the nonhomogeneous differential equation on the indicated interval.

31. $y'' - 7y' + 10y = 24e^x;$
$y = c_1 e^{2x} + c_2 e^{5x} + 6e^x, (-\infty, \quad)$

32. $y'' + y = \sec x;$
$y = c_1 \cos x + c_2 \sin x + x \sin x + (\cos x) \ln(\cos x),$
$(-\pi/2, \pi/2)$

33. $y'' - 4y' + 4y = 2e^{2x} + 4x - 12;$
$y = c_1 e^{2x} + c_2 xe^{2x} + x^2 e^{2x} + x - 2, (-\infty, \quad)$

34. $2x^2 y'' + 5xy' + y = x^2 - x;$
$y = c_1 x^{-1/2} + c_2 x^{-1} + \frac{1}{15}x^2 - \frac{1}{6}x, (0, \quad)$

35. **(a)** Verify that $y_{p_1} = 3e^{2x}$ and $y_{p_2} = x^2 + 3x$ are, respectively, particular solutions of

$$y'' - 6y' + 5y = -9e^{2x}$$

and $$y'' - 6y' + 5y = 5x^2 + 3x - 16.$$

(b) Use part (a) to find particular solutions of

$$y'' - 6y' + 5y = 5x^2 + 3x - 16 - 9e^{2x}$$

and $$y'' - 6y' + 5y = -10x^2 - 6x + 32 + e^{2x}.$$

36. **(a)** By inspection find a particular solution of

$$y'' + 2y = 10.$$

(b) By inspection find a particular solution of

$$y'' + 2y = -4x.$$

(c) Find a particular solution of $y'' + 2y = -4x + 10$.

(d) Find a particular solution of $y'' + 2y = 8x + 5$.

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Discussion Problems

37. Let $n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$. Discuss how the observations $D^n x^{n-1} = 0$ and $D^n x^n = n!$ can be used to find the general solutions of the given differential equations.

(a) $y'' = 0$ **(b)** $y''' = 0$ **(c)** $y^{(4)} = 0$

(d) $y'' = 2$ **(e)** $y''' = 6$ **(f)** $y^{(4)} = 24$

38. Suppose that $y_1 = e^x$ and $y_2 = e^{-x}$ are two solutions of a homogeneous linear differential equation. Explain why $y_3 = \cosh x$ and $y_4 = \sinh x$ are also solutions of the equation.

39. **(a)** Verify that $y_1 = x^3$ and $y_2 = |x|^3$ are linearly independent solutions of the differential equation $x^2y'' - 4xy' + 6y = 0$ on the interval $(-\infty, \quad)$.

(b) Show that $W(y_1, y_2) = 0$ for every real number x. Does this result violate Theorem 4.1.3? Explain.

(c) Verify that $Y_1 = x^3$ and $Y_2 = x^2$ are also linearly independent solutions of the differential equation in part (a) on the interval $(-\infty, \quad)$.

(d) Find a solution of the differential equation satisfying $y(0) = 0, y'(0) = 0$.

(e) By the superposition principle, Theorem 4.1.2, both linear combinations $y = c_1y_1 + c_2y_2$ and $Y = c_1Y_1 + c_2Y_2$ are solutions of the differential equation. Discuss whether one, both, or neither of the linear combinations is a general solution of the differential equation on the interval $(-\infty, \quad)$.

40. Is the set of functions $f_1(x) = e^{x+2}$, $f_2(x) = e^{x-3}$ linearly dependent or linearly independent on $(-\infty, \quad)$? Discuss.

41. Suppose $y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_k$ are k linearly independent solutions on $(-\infty, \quad)$ of a homogeneous linear nth-order differential equation with constant coefficients. By Theorem 4.1.2 it follows that $y_{k+1} = 0$ is also a solution of the differential equation. Is the set of solutions $y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_k, y_{k+1}$ linearly dependent or linearly independent on $(-\infty, \quad)$? Discuss.

42. Suppose that $y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_k$ are k nontrivial solutions of a homogeneous linear nth-order differential equation with constant coefficients and that $k = n + 1$. Is the set of solutions $y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_k$ linearly dependent or linearly independent on $(-\infty, \quad)$? Discuss.

4.2 REDUCTION OF ORDER

REVIEW MATERIAL

- Section 2.5 (using a substitution)
- Section 4.1

INTRODUCTION In the preceding section we saw that the general solution of a homogeneous linear second-order differential equation

$$a_2(x)y'' + a_1(x)y' + a_0(x)y = 0 \tag{1}$$

is a linear combination $y = c_1y_1 + c_2y_2$, where y_1 and y_2 are solutions that constitute a linearly independent set on some interval I. Beginning in the next section, we examine a method for determining these solutions when the coefficients of the differential equation in (1) are constants. This method, which is a straightforward exercise in algebra, breaks down in a few cases and yields only a single solution y_1 of the DE. It turns out that we can construct a second solution y_2 of a homogeneous equation (1) (even when the coefficients in (1) are variable) provided that we know a nontrivial solution y_1 of the DE. The basic idea described in this section is that *equation* (1) *can be reduced to a linear first-o der DE by means of a substitution* involving the known solution y_1. A second solution y_2 of (1) is apparent after this first-order differential equation is solved.

Reduction of Order Suppose that y_1 denotes a nontrivial solution of (1) and that y_1 is defined on an interval I. We seek a second solution y_2 so that the set consisting of y_1 and y_2 is linearly independent on I. Recall from Section 4.1 that if y_1 and y_2 are linearly independent, then their quotient y_2/y_1 is nonconstant on I—that is, $y_2(x)/y_1(x) = u(x)$ or $y_2(x) = u(x)y_1(x)$. The function $u(x)$ can be found by substituting $y_2(x) = u(x)y_1(x)$ into the given differential equation. This method is called **reduction of order** because we must solve a linear first-order differential equation to find u.

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

EXAMPLE 1 A Second Solution by Reduction of Order

Given that $y_1 = e^x$ is a solution of $y'' - y = 0$ on the interval $(-\infty, \quad)$, use reduction of order to find a second solution y_2.

SOLUTION If $y = u(x)y_1(x) = u(x)e^x$, then the Product Rule gives

$$y' = ue^x + e^x u', \quad y'' = ue^x + 2e^x u' + e^x u'',$$

and so

$$y'' - y = e^x(u'' + 2u') = 0.$$

Since $e^x \neq 0$, the last equation requires $u'' + 2u' = 0$. If we make the substitution $w = u'$, this linear second-order equation in u becomes $w' + 2w = 0$, which is a linear first-order equation in w. Using the integrating factor e^{2x}, we can write $\dfrac{d}{dx}[e^{2x}w] = 0$. After integrating, we get $w = c_1e^{-2x}$ or $u' = c_1e^{-2x}$. Integrating again then yields $u = -\frac{1}{2}c_1e^{-2x} + c_2$. Thus

$$y = u(x)e^x = -\frac{c_1}{2}e^{-x} + c_2e^x. \tag{2}$$

By picking $c_2 = 0$ and $c_1 = -2$, we obtain the desired second solution, $y_2 = e^{-x}$. Because $W(e^x, e^{-x}) \neq 0$ for every x, the solutions are linearly independent on $(-\infty, \quad)$. ☰

Since we have shown that $y_1 = e^x$ and $y_2 = e^{-x}$ are linearly independent solutions of a linear second-order equation, the expression in (2) is actually the general solution of $y'' - y = 0$ on $(-\infty, \quad)$.

General Case Suppose we divide by $a_2(x)$ to put equation (1) in the **standard form**

$$y'' + P(x)y' + Q(x)y = 0, \tag{3}$$

where $P(x)$ and $Q(x)$ are continuous on some interval I. Let us suppose further that $y_1(x)$ is a known solution of (3) on I and that $y_1(x) \neq 0$ for every x in the interval. If we define $y = u(x)y_1(x)$, it follows that

$$y' = uy_1' + y_1u', \quad y'' = uy_1'' + 2y_1'u' + y_1u''$$

$$y'' + Py' + Qy = u[\underbrace{y_1'' + Py_1' + Qy_1}_{\text{zero}}] + y_1u'' + (2y_1' + Py_1)u' = 0.$$

This implies that we must have

$$y_1u'' + (2y_1' + Py_1)u' = 0 \quad \text{or} \quad y_1w' + (2y_1' + Py_1)w = 0, \tag{4}$$

where we have let $w = u'$. Observe that the last equation in (4) is both linear and separable. Separating variables and integrating, we obtain

$$\frac{dw}{w} + 2\frac{y_1'}{y_1}dx + P\,dx = 0$$

$$\ln|wy_1^2| = -\int P\,dx + c \quad \text{or} \quad wy_1^2 = c_1e^{-\int P\,dx}.$$

We solve the last equation for w, use $w = u'$, and integrate again:

$$u = c_1\int \frac{e^{-\int P\,dx}}{y_1^2}dx + c_2.$$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

By choosing $c_1 = 1$ and $c_2 = 0$, we find from $y = u(x)y_1(x)$ that a second solution of equation (3) is

$$y_2 = y_1(x) \int \frac{e^{-\int P(x)\,dx}}{y_1^2(x)}\,dx. \tag{5}$$

It makes a good review of differentiation to verify that the function $y_2(x)$ defined in (5) satisfies equation (3) and that y_1 and y_2 are linearly independent on any interval on which $y_1(x)$ is not zero.

EXAMPLE 2 A Second Solution by Formula (5)

The function $y_1 = x^2$ is a solution of $x^2y'' - 3xy' + 4y = 0$. Find the general solution of the differential equation on the interval $(0, \quad)$.

SOLUTION From the standard form of the equation,

$$y'' - \frac{3}{x}y' + \frac{4}{x^2}y = 0,$$

we find from (5)

$$y_2 = x^2 \int \frac{e^{3\int dx/x}}{x^4}\,dx \qquad \leftarrow e^{3\int dx/x} = e^{\ln x^3} = x^3$$

$$= x^2 \int \frac{dx}{x} = x^2 \ln x.$$

The general solution on the interval $(0, \quad)$ is given by $y = c_1y_1 + c_2y_2$; that is, $y = c_1x^2 + c_2x^2 \ln x$.

REMARKS

(*i*) The derivation and use of formula (5) have been illustrated here because this formula appears again in the next section and in Sections 4.7 and 6.3. We use (5) simply to save time in obtaining a desired result. Your instructor will tell you whether you should memorize (5) or whether you should know the first principles of reduction of order.

(*ii*) Reduction of order can be used to find the general solution of a nonhomogeneous equation $a_2(x)y'' + a_1(x)y' + a_0(x)y = g(x)$ whenever a solution y_1 of the associated homogeneous equation is known. See Problems 17–20 in Exercises 4.2.

EXERCISES 4.2

Answers to selected odd-numbered problems begin on page ANS-5.

In Problems 1–16 the indicated function $y_1(x)$ is a solution of the given differential equation. Use reduction of order or formula (5), as instructed, to find a second solution $y_2(x)$.

1. $y'' - 4y' + 4y = 0; \quad y_1 = e^{2x}$

2. $y'' + 2y' + y = 0; \quad y_1 = xe^{-x}$

3. $y'' + 16y = 0; \quad y_1 = \cos 4x$

4. $y'' + 9y = 0; \quad y_1 = \sin 3x$

5. $y'' - y = 0; \quad y_1 = \cosh x$

6. $y'' - 25y = 0; \quad y_1 = e^{5x}$

7. $9y'' - 12y' + 4y = 0; \quad y_1 = e^{2x/3}$

8. $6y'' + y' - y = 0; \quad y_1 = e^{x/3}$

9. $x^2y'' - 7xy' + 16y = 0; \quad y_1 = x^4$

10. $x^2y'' + 2xy' - 6y = 0; \quad y_1 = x^2$

11. $xy'' + y' = 0; \quad y_1 = \ln x$

12. $4x^2y'' + y = 0; \quad y_1 = x^{1/2} \ln x$

13. $x^2y'' - xy' + 2y = 0; \quad y_1 = x \sin(\ln x)$

14. $x^2y'' - 3xy' + 5y = 0; \quad y_1 = x^2 \cos(\ln x)$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

15. $(1 - 2x - x^2)y'' + 2(1 + x)y' - 2y = 0; \quad y_1 = x + 1$

16. $(1 - x^2)y'' + 2xy' = 0; \quad y_1 = 1$

In Problems 17–20 the indicated function $y_1(x)$ is a solution of the associated homogeneous equation. Use the method of reduction of order to find a second solution $y_2(x)$ of the homogeneous equation and a particular solution of the given nonhomogeneous equation.

17. $y'' - 4y = 2; \quad y_1 = e^{-2x}$

18. $y'' + y' = 1; \quad y_1 = 1$

19. $y'' - 3y' + 2y = 5e^{3x}; \quad y_1 = e^x$

20. $y'' - 4y' + 3y = x; \quad y_1 = e^x$

Discussion Problems

21. **(a)** Give a convincing demonstration that the second-order equation $ay'' + by' + cy = 0$, a, b, and c constants, always possesses at least one solution of the form $y_1 = e^{m_1 x}$, m_1 a constant.

(b) Explain why the differential equation in part (a) must then have a second solution either of the form $y_2 = e^{m_2 x}$ or of the form $y_2 = xe^{m_1 x}$, m_1 and m_2 constants.

(c) Reexamine Problems 1–8. Can you explain why the statements in parts (a) and (b) above are not contradicted by the answers to Problems 3–5?

22. Verify that $y_1(x) = x$ is a solution of $xy'' - xy' + y = 0$. Use reduction of order to find a second solution $y_2(x)$ in the form of an infinite series. Conjecture an interval of definition for $y_2(x)$.

Computer Lab Assignments

23. **(a)** Verify that $y_1(x) = e^x$ is a solution of

$$xy'' - (x + 10)y' + 10y = 0.$$

(b) Use (5) to find a second solution $y_2(x)$. Use a CAS to carry out the required integration.

(c) Explain, using Corollary (A) of Theorem 4.1.2, why the second solution can be written compactly as

$$y_2(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{10} \frac{1}{n!} x^n.$$

4.3 HOMOGENEOUS LINEAR EQUATIONS WITH CONSTANT COEFFICIENTS

REVIEW MATERIAL

- Review Problems 27–30 in Exercises 1.1 and Theorem 4.1.5
- Review the algebra of solving polynomial equations (see the *Student Resource Manual*)

INTRODUCTION As a means of motivating the discussion in this section, let us return to first-order differential equations—more specifically, to *homogeneous* linear equations $ay' + by = 0$, where the coefficients $a \neq 0$ and b are constants. This type of equation can be solved either by separation of variables or with the aid of an integrating factor, but there is another solution method, one that uses only algebra. Before illustrating this alternative method, we make one observation: Solving $ay' + by = 0$ for y' yields $y' = ky$, where k is a constant. This observation reveals the nature of the unknown solution y; the only nontrivial elementary function whose derivative is a constant multiple of itself is an exponential function e^{mx}. Now the new solution method: If we substitute $y = e^{mx}$ and $y' = me^{mx}$ into $ay' + by = 0$, we get

$$ame^{mx} + be^{mx} = 0 \qquad \text{or} \qquad e^{mx}(am + b) = 0.$$

Since e^{mx} is never zero for real values of x, the last equation is satisfied only when m is a solution or root of the first-degree polynomial equation $am + b = 0$. For this single value of m, $y = e^{mx}$ is a solution of the DE. To illustrate, consider the constant-coefficient equation $2y' + 5y = 0$. It is not necessary to go through the differentiation and substitution of $y = e^{mx}$ into the DE; we merely have to form the equation $2m + 5 = 0$ and solve it for m. From $m = -\frac{5}{2}$ we conclude that $y = e^{-5x/2}$ is a solution of $2y' + 5y = 0$, and its general solution on the interval $(-\infty, \quad)$ is $y = c_1 e^{-5x/2}$.

In this section we will see that the foregoing procedure can produce exponential solutions for homogeneous linear higher-order DEs,

$$a_n y^{(n)} + a_{n-1} y^{(n-1)} + \cdots + a_2 y'' + a_1 y' + a_0 y = 0, \tag{1}$$

where the coefficients a_i, $i = 0, 1, \ldots, n$ are real constants and $a_n \neq 0$.

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Auxiliary Equation We begin by considering the special case of the second-order equation

$$ay'' + by' + cy = 0, \tag{2}$$

where a, b, and c are constants. If we try to find a solution of the form $y = e^{mx}$, then after substitution of $y' = me^{mx}$ and $y'' = m^2e^{mx}$, equation (2) becomes

$$am^2e^{mx} + bme^{mx} + ce^{mx} = 0 \qquad \text{or} \qquad e^{mx}(am^2 + bm + c) = 0.$$

As in the introduction we argue that because $e^{mx} \neq 0$ for all x, it is apparent that the only way $y = e^{mx}$ can satisfy the differential equation (2) is when m is chosen as a root of the quadratic equation

$$am^2 + bm + c = 0. \tag{3}$$

This last equation is called the **auxiliary equation** of the differential equation (2). Since the two roots of (3) are $m_1 = (-b + \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac})/2a$ and $m_2 = (-b - \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac})/2a$, there will be three forms of the general solution of (2) corresponding to the three cases:

- m_1 and m_2 real and distinct ($b^2 - 4ac > 0$),
- m_1 and m_2 real and equal ($b^2 - 4ac = 0$), and
- m_1 and m_2 conjugate complex numbers ($b^2 - 4ac < 0$).

We discuss each of these cases in turn.

Case I: Distinct Real Roots Under the assumption that the auxiliary equation (3) has two unequal real roots m_1 and m_2, we find two solutions, $y_1 = e^{m_1x}$ and $y_2 = e^{m_2x}$. We see that these functions are linearly independent on $(-\infty, \quad)$ and hence form a fundamental set. It follows that the general solution of (2) on this interval is

$$y = c_1e^{m_1x} + c_2e^{m_2x}. \tag{4}$$

Case II: Repeated Real Roots When $m_1 = m_2$, we necessarily obtain only one exponential solution, $y_1 = e^{m_1x}$. From the quadratic formula we find that $m_1 = -b/2a$ since the only way to have $m_1 = m_2$ is to have $b^2 - 4ac = 0$. It follows from (5) in Section 4.2 that a second solution of the equation is

$$y_2 = e^{m_1x}\int \frac{e^{2m_1x}}{e^{2m_1x}}\,dx = e^{m_1x}\int dx = xe^{m_1x}. \tag{5}$$

In (5) we have used the fact that $-b/a = 2m_1$. The general solution is then

$$y = c_1e^{m_1x} + c_2xe^{m_1x}. \tag{6}$$

Case III: Conjugate Complex Roots If m_1 and m_2 are complex, then we can write $m_1 = \alpha + i\beta$ and $m_2 = \alpha - i\beta$, where α and $\beta > 0$ are real and $i^2 = -1$. Formally, there is no difference between this case and Case I, and hence

$$y = C_1e^{(\alpha+i\beta)x} + C_2e^{(\alpha-i\beta)x}.$$

However, in practice we prefer to work with real functions instead of complex exponentials. To this end we use **Euler's formula:**

$$e^{i\theta} = \cos\theta + i\sin\theta,$$

where θ is any real number.* It follows from this formula that

$$e^{i\beta x} = \cos\beta x + i\sin\beta x \qquad \text{and} \qquad e^{-i\beta x} = \cos\beta x - i\sin\beta x, \tag{7}$$

*A formal derivation of Euler's formula can be obtained from the Maclaurin series $e^x = \sum_{n=0} \frac{x^n}{n!}$ by substituting $x = i\theta$, using $i^2 = -1$, $i^3 = -i$, . . . , and then separating the series into real and imaginary parts. The plausibility thus established, we can adopt $\cos\theta + i\sin\theta$ as the *definitio* of $e^{i\theta}$.

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

where we have used $\cos(-\beta x) = \cos \beta x$ and $\sin(-\beta x) = -\sin \beta x$. Note that by first adding and then subtracting the two equations in (7), we obtain, respectively,

$$e^{i\beta x} + e^{-i\beta x} = 2\cos \beta x \qquad \text{and} \qquad e^{i\beta x} - e^{-i\beta x} = 2i \sin \beta x.$$

Since $y = C_1 e^{(\alpha+i\beta)x} + C_2 e^{(\alpha-i\beta)x}$ is a solution of (2) for any choice of the constants C_1 and C_2, the choices $C_1 = C_2 = 1$ and $C_1 = 1$, $C_2 = -1$ give, in turn, two solutions:

$$y_1 = e^{(\alpha+i\beta)x} + e^{(\alpha-i\beta)x} \qquad \text{and} \qquad y_2 = e^{(\alpha+i\beta)x} - e^{(\alpha-i\beta)x}.$$

But $$y_1 = e^{\alpha x}(e^{i\beta x} + e^{-i\beta x}) = 2e^{\alpha x}\cos \beta x$$

and $$y_2 = e^{\alpha x}(e^{i\beta x} - e^{-i\beta x}) = 2ie^{\alpha x}\sin \beta x.$$

Hence from Corollary (A) of Theorem 4.1.2 the last two results show that $e^{\alpha x}\cos \beta x$ and $e^{\alpha x}\sin \beta x$ are *real* solutions of (2). Moreover, these solutions form a fundamental set on $(-\infty, \quad)$. Consequently, the general solution is

$$y = c_1 e^{\alpha x}\cos \beta x + c_2 e^{\alpha x}\sin \beta x = e^{\alpha x}(c_1 \cos \beta x + c_2 \sin \beta x). \tag{8}$$

EXAMPLE 1 Second-Order DEs

Solve the following differential equations.

(a) $2y'' - 5y' - 3y = 0$ **(b)** $y'' - 10y' + 25y = 0$ **(c)** $y'' + 4y' + 7y = 0$

SOLUTION We give the auxiliary equations, the roots, and the corresponding general solutions.

(a) $2m^2 - 5m - 3 = (2m + 1)(m - 3) = 0, \quad m_1 = -\frac{1}{2}, m_2 = 3$

From (4), $y = c_1 e^{-x/2} + c_2 e^{3x}$.

(b) $m^2 - 10m + 25 = (m - 5)^2 = 0, \quad m_1 = m_2 = 5$

From (6), $y = c_1 e^{5x} + c_2 x e^{5x}$.

(c) $m^2 + 4m + 7 = 0, \; m_1 = -2 + \sqrt{3}i, \quad m_2 = -2 - \sqrt{3}i$

From (8) with $\alpha = -2, \beta = \sqrt{3}$, $y = e^{-2x}\left(c_1 \cos \sqrt{3}x + c_2 \sin \sqrt{3}x\right)$. ≡

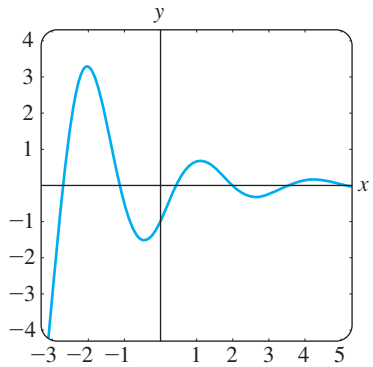


FIGURE 4.3.1 Solution curve of IVP in Example 2

EXAMPLE 2 An Initial-Value Problem

Solve $4y'' + 4y' + 17y = 0, y(0) = -1, y'(0) = 2$.

SOLUTION By the quadratic formula we find that the roots of the auxiliary equation $4m^2 + 4m + 17 = 0$ are $m_1 = -\frac{1}{2} + 2i$ and $m_2 = -\frac{1}{2} - 2i$. Thus from (8) we have $y = e^{-x/2}(c_1 \cos 2x + c_2 \sin 2x)$. Applying the condition $y(0) = -1$, we see from $e^0(c_1 \cos 0 + c_2 \sin 0) = -1$ that $c_1 = -1$. Differentiating $y = e^{-x/2}(-\cos 2x + c_2 \sin 2x)$ and then using $y'(0) = 2$ gives $2c_2 + \frac{1}{2} = 2$ or $c_2 = \frac{3}{4}$. Hence the solution of the IVP is $y = e^{-x/2}(-\cos 2x + \frac{3}{4}\sin 2x)$. In Figure 4.3.1 we see that the solution is oscillatory, but $y \to 0$ as $x \to \quad$. ≡

Two Equations Worth Knowing The two differential equations

$$y'' + k^2 y = 0 \qquad \text{and} \qquad y'' - k^2 y = 0,$$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

where k is real, are important in applied mathematics. For $y'' + k^2y = 0$ the auxiliary equation $m^2 + k^2 = 0$ has imaginary roots $m_1 = ki$ and $m_2 = -ki$. With $\alpha = 0$ and $\beta = k$ in (8) the general solution of the DE is seen to be

$$y = c_1 \cos kx + c_2 \sin kx. \tag{9}$$

On the other hand, the auxiliary equation $m^2 - k^2 = 0$ for $y'' - k^2y = 0$ has distinct real roots $m_1 = k$ and $m_2 = -k$, and so by (4) the general solution of the DE is

$$y = c_1e^{kx} + c_2e^{-kx}. \tag{10}$$

Notice that if we choose $c_1 = c_2 = \frac{1}{2}$ and $c_1 = \frac{1}{2}$, $c_2 = -\frac{1}{2}$ in (10), we get the particular solutions $y = \frac{1}{2}(e^{kx} + e^{-kx}) = \cosh kx$ and $y = \frac{1}{2}(e^{kx} - e^{-kx}) = \sinh kx$. Since $\cosh kx$ and $\sinh kx$ are linearly independent on any interval of the x-axis, an alternative form for the general solution of $y'' - k^2y = 0$ is

$$y = c_1 \cosh kx + c_2 \sinh kx. \tag{11}$$

See Problems 41 and 42 in Exercises 4.3.

Higher-Order Equations In general, to solve an nth-order differential equation (1), where the a_i, $i = 0, 1, \ldots, n$ are real constants, we must solve an nth-degree polynomial equation

$$a_nm^n + a_{n-1}m^{n-1} + \cdots + a_2m^2 + a_1m + a_0 = 0. \tag{12}$$

If all the roots of (12) are real and distinct, then the general solution of (1) is

$$y = c_1e^{m_1x} + c_2e^{m_2x} + \cdots + c_ne^{m_nx}.$$

It is somewhat harder to summarize the analogues of Cases II and III because the roots of an auxiliary equation of degree greater than two can occur in many combinations. For example, a fifth-degree equation could have five distinct real roots, or three distinct real and two complex roots, or one real and four complex roots, or five real but equal roots, or five real roots but two of them equal, and so on. When m_1 is a root of multiplicity k of an nth-degree auxiliary equation (that is, k roots are equal to m_1), it can be shown that the linearly independent solutions are

$$e^{m_1x}, \quad xe^{m_1x}, \quad x^2e^{m_1x}, \ldots, \quad x^{k-1}e^{m_1x}$$

and the general solution must contain the linear combination

$$c_1e^{m_1x} + c_2xe^{m_1x} + c_3x^2e^{m_1x} + \cdots + c_kx^{k-1}e^{m_1x}.$$

Finally, it should be remembered that when the coefficients are real, complex roots of an auxiliary equation always appear in conjugate pairs. Thus, for example, a cubic polynomial equation can have at most two complex roots.

EXAMPLE 3 Third-Order DE

Solve $y''' + 3y'' - 4y = 0$.

SOLUTION It should be apparent from inspection of $m^3 + 3m^2 - 4 = 0$ that one root is $m_1 = 1$, so $m - 1$ is a factor of $m^3 + 3m^2 - 4$. By division we find

$$m^3 + 3m^2 - 4 = (m - 1)(m^2 + 4m + 4) = (m - 1)(m + 2)^2,$$

so the other roots are $m_2 = m_3 = -2$. Thus the general solution of the DE is $y = c_1e^x + c_2e^{-2x} + c_3xe^{-2x}$.

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

EXAMPLE 4 Fourth-Order DE

Solve $\dfrac{d^4y}{dx^4} + 2\dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2} + y = 0.$

SOLUTION The auxiliary equation $m^4 + 2m^2 + 1 = (m^2 + 1)^2 = 0$ has roots $m_1 = m_3 = i$ and $m_2 = m_4 = -i$. Thus from Case II the solution is

$$y = C_1e^{ix} + C_2e^{-ix} + C_3xe^{ix} + C_4xe^{-ix}.$$

By Euler's formula the grouping $C_1e^{ix} + C_2e^{-ix}$ can be rewritten as

$$c_1 \cos x + c_2 \sin x$$

after a relabeling of constants. Similarly, $x(C_3e^{ix} + C_4e^{-ix})$ can be expressed as $x(c_3 \cos x + c_4 \sin x)$. Hence the general solution is

$$y = c_1 \cos x + c_2 \sin x + c_3x \cos x + c_4x \sin x.$$ ☰

Example 4 illustrates a special case when the auxiliary equation has repeated complex roots. In general, if $m_1 = \alpha + i\beta$, $\beta > 0$ is a complex root of multiplicity k of an auxiliary equation with real coefficients, then its conjugate $m_2 = \alpha - i\beta$ is also a root of multiplicity k. From the $2k$ complex-valued solutions

$$e^{(\alpha+i\beta)x}, \quad xe^{(\alpha+i\beta)x}, \quad x^2e^{(\alpha+i\beta)x}, \quad \ldots, \quad x^{k-1}e^{(\alpha+i\beta)x},$$
$$e^{(\alpha-i\beta)x}, \quad xe^{(\alpha-i\beta)x}, \quad x^2e^{(\alpha-i\beta)x}, \quad \ldots, \quad x^{k-1}e^{(\alpha-i\beta)x},$$

we conclude, with the aid of Euler's formula, that the general solution of the corresponding differential equation must then contain a linear combination of the $2k$ real linearly independent solutions

$$e^{\alpha x}\cos \beta x, \quad xe^{\alpha x}\cos \beta x, \quad x^2e^{\alpha x}\cos \beta x, \quad \ldots, \quad x^{k-1}e^{\alpha x}\cos \beta x,$$
$$e^{\alpha x}\sin \beta x, \quad xe^{\alpha x}\sin \beta x, \quad x^2e^{\alpha x}\sin \beta x, \quad \ldots, \quad x^{k-1}e^{\alpha x}\sin \beta x.$$

In Example 4 we identify $k = 2$, $\alpha = 0$, and $\beta = 1$.

Of course the most difficult aspect of solving constant-coefficient differential equations is finding roots of auxiliary equations of degree greater than two. For example, to solve $3y''' + 5y'' + 10y' - 4y = 0$, we must solve $3m^3 + 5m^2 + 10m - 4 = 0$. Something we can try is to test the auxiliary equation for rational roots. Recall that if $m_1 = p/q$ is a rational root (expressed in lowest terms) of an auxiliary equation $a_nm^n + \cdots + a_1m + a_0 = 0$ with integer coefficients, then p is a factor of a_0 and q is a factor of a_n. For our specific cubic auxiliary equation, all the factors of $a_0 = -4$ and $a_n = 3$ are p: ± 1, ± 2, ± 4 and q: ± 1, ± 3, so the possible rational roots are p/q: ± 1, ± 2, ± 4, $\pm\frac{1}{3}$, $\pm\frac{2}{3}$, $\pm\frac{4}{3}$. Each of these numbers can then be tested—say, by synthetic division. In this way we discover both the root $m_1 = \frac{1}{3}$ and the factorization

$$3m^3 + 5m^2 + 10m - 4 = \left(m - \tfrac{1}{3}\right)(3m^2 + 6m + 12).$$

The quadratic formula then yields the remaining roots $m_2 = -1 + \sqrt{3}i$ and $m_3 = -1 - \sqrt{3}i$. Therefore the general solution of $3y''' + 5y'' + 10y' - 4y = 0$ is $y = c_1e^{x/3} + e^{-x}(c_2 \cos \sqrt{3}x + c_3 \sin \sqrt{3}x)$.

Use of Computers Finding roots or approximation of roots of auxiliary equations is a routine problem with an appropriate calculator or computer software. Polynomial equations (in one variable) of degree less than five can be solved by means of algebraic formulas using the *solve* commands in *Mathematica* and *Maple*. For auxiliary equations of degree five or greater it might be necessary to resort to numerical commands such as **NSolve** and **FindRoot** in *Mathematica*. Because of their capability of solving polynomial equations, it is not surprising that these computer

There is more on this in the *SRM*. ▶

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

algebra systems are also able, by means of their *dsolve* commands, to provide explicit solutions of homogeneous linear constant-coefficient differential equations.

In the classic text *Differential Equations* by Ralph Palmer Agnew* (used by the author as a student) the following statement is made:

> *It is not reasonable to expect students in this course to have computing skill and equipment necessary for efficient solving of equations such a*

$$4.317\frac{d^4y}{dx^4} + 2.179\frac{d^3y}{dx^3} + 1.416\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + 1.295\frac{dy}{dx} + 3.169y = 0. \tag{13}$$

Although it is debatable whether computing skills have improved in the intervening years, it is a certainty that technology has. If one has access to a computer algebra system, equation (13) could now be considered reasonable. After simplification and some relabeling of output, *Mathematica* yields the (approximate) general solution

$$y = c_1e^{-0.728852x}\cos(0.618605x) + c_2e^{-0.728852x}\sin(0.618605x)$$
$$+ c_3e^{0.476478x}\cos(0.759081x) + c_4e^{0.476478x}\sin(0.759081x).$$

Finally, if we are faced with an initial-value problem consisting of, say, a fourth-order equation, then to fit the general solution of the DE to the four initial conditions, we must solve four linear equations in four unknowns (the c_1, c_2, c_3, c_4 in the general solution). Using a CAS to solve the system can save lots of time. See Problems 69 and 70 in Exercises 4.3 and Problem 41 in Chapter 4 in Review.

*McGraw-Hill, New York, 1960.

EXERCISES 4.3

Answers to selected odd-numbered problems begin on page ANS-5.

In Problems 1–14 find the general solution of the given second-order differential equation.

1. $4y'' + y' = 0$

2. $y'' - 36y = 0$

3. $y'' - y' - 6y = 0$

4. $y'' - 3y' + 2y = 0$

5. $y'' + 8y' + 16y = 0$

6. $y'' - 10y' + 25y = 0$

7. $12y'' - 5y' - 2y = 0$

8. $y'' + 4y' - y = 0$

9. $y'' + 9y = 0$

10. $3y'' + y = 0$

11. $y'' - 4y' + 5y = 0$

12. $2y'' + 2y' + y = 0$

13. $3y'' + 2y' + y = 0$

14. $2y'' - 3y' + 4y = 0$

In Problems 15–28 find the general solution of the given higher-order differential equation.

15. $y''' - 4y'' - 5y' = 0$

16. $y''' - y = 0$

17. $y''' - 5y'' + 3y' + 9y = 0$

18. $y''' + 3y'' - 4y' - 12y = 0$

19. $\dfrac{d^3u}{dt^3} + \dfrac{d^2u}{dt^2} - 2u = 0$

20. $\dfrac{d^3x}{dt^3} - \dfrac{d^2x}{dt^2} - 4x = 0$

21. $y''' + 3y'' + 3y' + y = 0$

22. $y''' - 6y'' + 12y' - 8y = 0$

23. $y^{(4)} + y''' + y'' = 0$

24. $y^{(4)} - 2y'' + y = 0$

25. $16\dfrac{d^4y}{dx^4} + 24\dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2} + 9y = 0$

26. $\dfrac{d^4y}{dx^4} - 7\dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2} - 18y = 0$

27. $\dfrac{d^5u}{dr^5} + 5\dfrac{d^4u}{dr^4} - 2\dfrac{d^3u}{dr^3} - 10\dfrac{d^2u}{dr^2} + \dfrac{du}{dr} + 5u = 0$

28. $2\dfrac{d^5x}{ds^5} - 7\dfrac{d^4x}{ds^4} + 12\dfrac{d^3x}{ds^3} + 8\dfrac{d^2x}{ds^2} = 0$

In Problems 29–36 solve the given initial-value problem.

29. $y'' + 16y = 0, \quad y(0) = 2, y'(0) = -2$

30. $\dfrac{d^2y}{d\theta^2} + y = 0, \quad y(\pi/3) = 0, y'(\pi/3) = 2$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

31. $\dfrac{d^2y}{dt^2} - 4\dfrac{dy}{dt} - 5y = 0, \quad y(1) = 0, y'(1) = 2$

32. $4y'' - 4y' - 3y = 0, \quad y(0) = 1, y'(0) = 5$

33. $y'' + y' + 2y = 0, \quad y(0) = y'(0) = 0$

34. $y'' - 2y' + y = 0, \quad y(0) = 5, y'(0) = 10$

35. $y''' + 12y'' + 36y' = 0, \quad y(0) = 0, y'(0) = 1, y''(0) = -7$

36. $y''' + 2y'' - 5y' - 6y = 0, \quad y(0) = y'(0) = 0, \ y''(0) = 1$

In Problems 37–40 solve the given boundary-value problem.

37. $y'' - 10y' + 25y = 0, \quad y(0) = 1, y(1) = 0$

38. $y'' + 4y = 0, \quad y(0) = 0, y(\pi) = 0$

39. $y'' + y = 0, \quad y'(0) = 0, y'(\pi/2) = 0$

40. $y'' - 2y' + 2y = 0, \quad y(0) = 1, y(\pi) = 1$

In Problems 41 and 42 solve the given problem first using the form of the general solution given in (10). Solve again, this time using the form given in (11).

41. $y'' - 3y = 0, \quad y(0) = 1, y'(0) = 5$

42. $y'' - y = 0, \quad y(0) = 1, y'(1) = 0$

In Problems 43–48 each figure represents the graph of a particular solution of one of the following differential equations:

(a) $y'' - 3y' - 4y = 0$ **(b)** $y'' + 4y = 0$

(c) $y'' + 2y' + y = 0$ **(d)** $y'' + y = 0$

(e) $y'' + 2y' + 2y = 0$ **(f)** $y'' - 3y' + 2y = 0$

Match a solution curve with one of the differential equations. Explain your reasoning.

43.

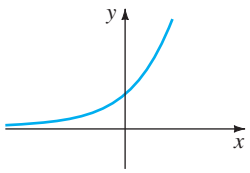


FIGURE 4.3.2 Graph for Problem 43

44.

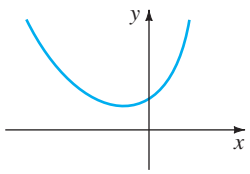


FIGURE 4.3.3 Graph for Problem 44

45.

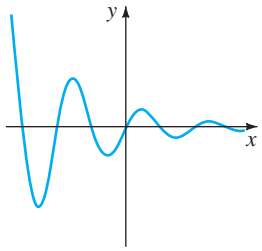


FIGURE 4.3.4 Graph for Problem 45

46.

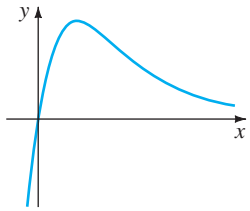


FIGURE 4.3.5 Graph for Problem 46

47.

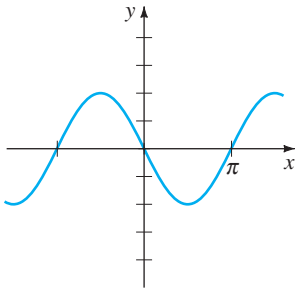


FIGURE 4.3.6 Graph for Problem 47

48.

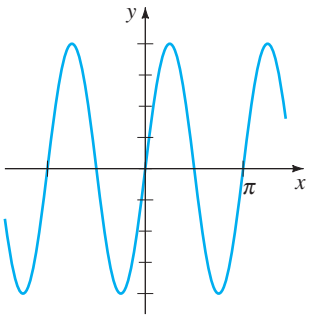


FIGURE 4.3.7 Graph for Problem 48

In Problems 49–58 find a homogeneous linear differential equation with constant coefficients whose general solution is given.

49. $y = c_1e^x + c_2e^{5x}$ **50.** $y = c_1e^{-4x} + c_2e^{-3x}$

51. $y = c_1 + c_2e^{2x}$ **52.** $y = c_1e^{10x} + c_2xe^{10x}$

53. $y = c_1\cos 3x + c_2\sin 3x$ **54.** $y = c_1\cosh 7x + c_2\sinh 7x$

55. $y = c_1e^{-x}\cos x + c_2e^{-x}\sin x$

56. $y = c_1 + c_2e^{2x}\cos 5x + c_3e^{2x}\sin 5x$

57. $y = c_1 + c_2x + c_3e^{8x}$

58. $y = c_1\cos x + c_2\sin x + c_3\cos 2x + c_4\sin 2x$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Discussion Problems

59. Two roots of a cubic auxiliary equation with real coefficients are $m_1 = -\frac{1}{2}$ and $m_2 = 3 + i$. What is the corresponding homogeneous linear differential equation? Discuss: Is your answer unique?

60. Find the general solution of $2y''' + 7y'' + 4y' - 4y = 0$ if $m_1 = \frac{1}{2}$ is one root of its auxiliary equation.

61. Find the general solution of $y''' + 6y'' + y' - 34y = 0$ if it is known that $y_1 = e^{-4x}\cos x$ is one solution.

62. To solve $y^{(4)} + y = 0$, we must find the roots of $m^4 + 1 = 0$. This is a trivial problem using a CAS but can also be done by hand working with complex numbers. Observe that $m^4 + 1 = (m^2 + 1)^2 - 2m^2$. How does this help? Solve the differential equation.

63. Verify that $y = \sinh x - 2\cos(x + \pi/6)$ is a particular solution of $y^{(4)} - y = 0$. Reconcile this particular solution with the general solution of the DE.

64. Consider the boundary-value problem $y'' + \lambda y = 0$, $y(0) = 0$, $y(\pi/2) = 0$. Discuss: Is it possible to determine values of λ so that the problem possesses **(a)** trivial solutions? **(b)** nontrivial solutions?

Computer Lab Assignments

In Problems 65–68 use a computer either as an aid in solving the auxiliary equation or as a means of directly obtaining the general solution of the given differential equation. If you use a CAS to obtain the general solution, simplify the output and, if necessary, write the solution in terms of real functions.

65. $y''' - 6y'' + 2y' + y = 0$

66. $6.11y''' + 8.59y'' + 7.93y' + 0.778y = 0$

67. $3.15y^{(4)} - 5.34y'' + 6.33y' - 2.03y = 0$

68. $y^{(4)} + 2y'' - y' + 2y = 0$

In Problems 69 and 70 use a CAS as an aid in solving the auxiliary equation. Form the general solution of the differential equation. Then use a CAS as an aid in solving the system of equations for the coefficients c_i, $i = 1, 2, 3, 4$ that results when the initial conditions are applied to the general solution.

69. $2y^{(4)} + 3y''' - 16y'' + 15y' - 4y = 0$,
$y(0) = -2$, $y'(0) = 6$, $y''(0) = 3$, $y'''(0) = \frac{1}{2}$

70. $y^{(4)} - 3y''' + 3y'' - y' = 0$,
$y(0) = y'(0) = 0$, $y''(0) = y'''(0) = 1$

4.4 UNDETERMINED COEFFICIENTS—SUPERPOSITION APPROACH*

REVIEW MATERIAL

- Review Theorems 4.1.6 and 4.1.7 (Section 4.1)

INTRODUCTION To solve a nonhomogeneous linear differential equation

$$a_n y^{(n)} + a_{n-1} y^{(n-1)} + \cdots + a_1 y' + a_0 y = g(x), \tag{1}$$

we must do two things:

- find the complementary function y_c and
- find *any* particular solution y_p of the nonhomogeneous equation (1).

Then, as was discussed in Section 4.1, the general solution of (1) is $y = y_c + y_p$. The complementary function y_c is the general solution of the associated homogeneous DE of (1), that is,

$$a_n y^{(n)} + a_{n-1} y^{(n-1)} + \cdots + a_1 y' + a_0 y = 0.$$

In Section 4.3 we saw how to solve these kinds of equations when the coefficients were constants. Our goal in the present section is to develop a method for obtaining particular solutions.

*__Note to the Instructor:__ In this section the method of undetermined coefficients is developed from the viewpoint of the superposition principle for nonhomogeneous equations (Theorem 4.7.1). In Section 4.5 an entirely different approach will be presented, one utilizing the concept of differential annihilator operators. Take your pick.

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Method of Undetermined Coefficient The first of two ways we shall consider for obtaining a particular solution y_p for a nonhomogeneous linear DE is called the **method of undetermined coefficients** The underlying idea behind this method is a conjecture about the form of y_p, an educated guess really, that is motivated by the kinds of functions that make up the input function $g(x)$. The general method is limited to linear DEs such as (1) where

- the coefficients a_i, $i = 0, 1, \ldots, n$ are constants and
- $g(x)$ is a constant k, a polynomial function, an exponential function $e^{\alpha x}$, a sine or cosine function $\sin \beta x$ or $\cos \beta x$, or finite sums and products of these functions.

Note Strictly speaking, $g(x) = k$ (constant) is a polynomial function. Since a constant function is probably not the first thing that comes to mind when you think of polynomial functions, for emphasis we shall continue to use the redundancy "constant functions, polynomials, ... "

The following functions are some examples of the types of inputs $g(x)$ that are appropriate for this discussion:

$$g(x) = 10, \quad g(x) = x^2 - 5x, \qquad g(x) = 15x - 6 + 8e^{-x},$$
$$g(x) = \sin 3x - 5x \cos 2x, \qquad g(x) = xe^x \sin x + (3x^2 - 1)e^{-4x}.$$

That is, $g(x)$ is a linear combination of functions of the type

$$P(x) = a_n x^n + a_{n-1} x^{n-1} + \cdots + a_1 x + a_0, \qquad P(x)\, e^{\alpha x}, \quad P(x)\, e^{\alpha x} \sin \beta x, \quad \text{and} \quad P(x)\, e^{\alpha x} \cos \beta x,$$

where n is a nonnegative integer and α and β are real numbers. The method of undetermined coefficients is not applicable to equations of form (1) when

$$g(x) = \ln x, \quad g(x) = \frac{1}{x}, \quad g(x) = \tan x, \quad g(x) = \sin^{-1} x,$$

and so on. Differential equations in which the input $g(x)$ is a function of this last kind will be considered in Section 4.6.

The set of functions that consists of constants, polynomials, exponentials $e^{\alpha x}$, sines, and cosines has the remarkable property that derivatives of their sums and products are again sums and products of constants, polynomials, exponentials $e^{\alpha x}$, sines, and cosines. Because the linear combination of derivatives $a_n y_p^{(n)} + a_{n-1} y_p^{(n-1)} + \cdots + a_1 y_p' + a_0 y_p$ must be identical to $g(x)$, it seems reasonable to assume that y_p *has the same form as* $g(x)$.

The next two examples illustrate the basic method.

EXAMPLE 1 General Solution Using Undetermined Coefficient

Solve $y'' + 4y' - 2y = 2x^2 - 3x + 6.$ (2)

SOLUTION **Step 1.** We first solve the associated homogeneous equation $y'' + 4y' - 2y = 0$. From the quadratic formula we find that the roots of the auxiliary equation $m^2 + 4m - 2 = 0$ are $m_1 = -2 - \sqrt{6}$ and $m_2 = -2 + \sqrt{6}$. Hence the complementary function is

$$y_c = c_1 e^{-(2+\sqrt{6})x} + c_2 e^{(-2+\sqrt{6})x}.$$

Step 2. Now, because the function $g(x)$ is a quadratic polynomial, let us assume a particular solution that is also in the form of a quadratic polynomial:

$$y_p = Ax^2 + Bx + C.$$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

We seek to determine *specifi* coefficients A, B, and C for which y_p is a solution of (2). Substituting y_p and the derivatives

$$y_p' = 2Ax + B \qquad \text{and} \qquad y_p'' = 2A$$

into the given differential equation (2), we get

$$y_p'' + 4y_p' - 2y_p = 2A + 8Ax + 4B - 2Ax^2 - 2Bx - 2C = 2x^2 - 3x + 6.$$

Because the last equation is supposed to be an identity, the coefficients of like powers of x must be equal:

$$\text{equal}$$
$$-2A\,x^2 + 8A - 2B\,x + 2A + 4B - 2C = 2x^2 - 3x + 6$$

That is, $\quad -2A = 2, \quad 8A - 2B = -3, \quad 2A + 4B - 2C = 6.$

Solving this system of equations leads to the values $A = -1$, $B = -\frac{5}{2}$, and $C = -9$. Thus a particular solution is

$$y_p = -x^2 - \frac{5}{2}x - 9.$$

Step 3. The general solution of the given equation is

$$y = y_c + y_p = c_1 e^{-(2+\sqrt{6})x} + c_2 e^{(-2+\sqrt{6})x} - x^2 - \frac{5}{2}x - 9.$$

EXAMPLE 2 Particular Solution Using Undetermined Coefficient

Find a particular solution of $y'' - y' + y = 2 \sin 3x$.

SOLUTION A natural first guess for a particular solution would be $A \sin 3x$. But because successive differentiations of $\sin 3x$ produce $\sin 3x$ *and* $\cos 3x$, we are prompted instead to assume a particular solution that includes both of these terms:

$$y_p = A \cos 3x + B \sin 3x.$$

Differentiating y_p and substituting the results into the differential equation gives, after regrouping,

$$y_p'' - y_p' + y_p = (-8A - 3B)\cos 3x + (3A - 8B)\sin 3x = 2 \sin 3x$$

or

$$\text{equal}$$
$$-8A - 3B\,\cos 3x + 3A - 8B\,\sin 3x = 0 \cos 3x + 2 \sin 3x.$$

From the resulting system of equations,

$$-8A - 3B = 0, \qquad 3A - 8B = 2,$$

we get $A = \frac{6}{73}$ and $B = -\frac{16}{73}$. A particular solution of the equation is

$$y_p = \frac{6}{73}\cos 3x - \frac{16}{73}\sin 3x.$$

As we mentioned, the form that we assume for the particular solution y_p is an educated guess; it is not a blind guess. This educated guess must take into consideration not only the types of functions that make up $g(x)$ but also, as we shall see in Example 4, the functions that make up the complementary function y_c.

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

EXAMPLE 3 Forming y_p by Superposition

Solve $y'' - 2y' - 3y = 4x - 5 + 6xe^{2x}$. (3)

SOLUTION **Step 1.** First, the solution of the associated homogeneous equation $y'' - 2y' - 3y = 0$ is found to be $y_c = c_1e^{-x} + c_2e^{3x}$.

Step 2. Next, the presence of $4x - 5$ in $g(x)$ suggests that the particular solution includes a linear polynomial. Furthermore, because the derivative of the product xe^{2x} produces $2xe^{2x}$ and e^{2x}, we also assume that the particular solution includes both xe^{2x} and e^{2x}. In other words, g is the sum of two basic kinds of functions:

$$g(x) = g_1(x) + g_2(x) = \textit{polynomial} + \textit{exponentials}.$$

Correspondingly, the superposition principle for nonhomogeneous equations (Theorem 4.1.7) suggests that we seek a particular solution

$$y_p = y_{p_1} + y_{p_2},$$

where $y_{p_1} = Ax + B$ and $y_{p_2} = Cxe^{2x} + Ee^{2x}$. Substituting

$$y_p = Ax + B + Cxe^{2x} + Ee^{2x}$$

into the given equation (3) and grouping like terms gives

$$y_p'' - 2y_p' - 3y_p = -3Ax - 2A - 3B - 3Cxe^{2x} + (2C - 3E)e^{2x} = 4x - 5 + 6xe^{2x}. \quad (4)$$

From this identity we obtain the four equations

$$-3A = 4, \qquad -2A - 3B = -5, \qquad -3C = 6, \qquad 2C - 3E = 0.$$

The last equation in this system results from the interpretation that the coefficient of e^{2x} in the right member of (4) is zero. Solving, we find $A = -\frac{4}{3}$, $B = \frac{23}{9}$, $C = -2$, and $E = -\frac{4}{3}$. Consequently,

$$y_p = -\frac{4}{3}x + \frac{23}{9} - 2xe^{2x} - \frac{4}{3}e^{2x}.$$

Step 3. The general solution of the equation is

$$y = c_1e^{-x} + c_2e^{3x} - \frac{4}{3}x + \frac{23}{9} - \left(2x + \frac{4}{3}\right)e^{2x}.$$

In light of the superposition principle (Theorem 4.1.7) we can also approach Example 3 from the viewpoint of solving two simpler problems. You should verify that substituting

$$y_{p_1} = Ax + B \quad \text{into} \quad y'' - 2y' - 3y = 4x - 5$$

and

$$y_{p_2} = Cxe^{2x} + Ee^{2x} \quad \text{into} \quad y'' - 2y' - 3y = 6xe^{2x}$$

yields, in turn, $y_{p_1} = -\frac{4}{3}x + \frac{23}{9}$ and $y_{p_2} = -\left(2x + \frac{4}{3}\right)e^{2x}$. A particular solution of (3) is then $y_p = y_{p_1} + y_{p_2}$.

The next example illustrates that sometimes the "obvious" assumption for the form of y_p is not a correct assumption.

EXAMPLE 4 A Glitch in the Method

Find a particular solution of $y'' - 5y' + 4y = 8e^x$.

SOLUTION Differentiation of e^x produces no new functions. Therefore proceeding as we did in the earlier examples, we can reasonably assume a particular solution of the form $y_p = Ae^x$. But substitution of this expression into the differential equation

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

yields the contradictory statement $0 = 8e^x$, so we have clearly made the wrong guess for y_p.

The difficulty here is apparent on examining the complementary function $y_c = c_1e^x + c_2e^{4x}$. Observe that our assumption Ae^x is already present in y_c. This means that e^x is a solution of the associated homogeneous differential equation, and a constant multiple Ae^x when substituted into the differential equation necessarily produces zero.

What then should be the form of y_p? Inspired by Case II of Section 4.3, let's see whether we can find a particular solution of the form

$$y_p = Axe^x.$$

Substituting $y_p' = Axe^x + Ae^x$ and $y_p'' = Axe^x + 2Ae^x$ into the differential equation and simplifying gives

$$y_p'' - 5y_p' + 4y_p = -3Ae^x = 8e^x.$$

From the last equality we see that the value of A is now determined as $A = -\frac{8}{3}$. Therefore a particular solution of the given equation is $y_p = -\frac{8}{3}xe^x$.

The difference in the procedures used in Examples 1–3 and in Example 4 suggests that we consider two cases. The first case reflects the situation in Examples 1–3.

Case I No function in the assumed particular solution is a solution of the associated homogeneous differential equation.

In Table 4.4.1 we illustrate some specific examples of $g(x)$ in (1) along with the corresponding form of the particular solution. We are, of course, taking for granted that no function in the assumed particular solution y_p is duplicated by a function in the complementary function y_c.

TABLE 4.4.1 Trial Particular Solutions

$g(x)$	Form of y_p
1. 1 (any constant)	A
2. $5x + 7$	$Ax + B$
3. $3x^2 - 2$	$Ax^2 + Bx + C$
4. $x^3 - x + 1$	$Ax^3 + Bx^2 + Cx + E$
5. $\sin 4x$	$A\cos 4x + B\sin 4x$
6. $\cos 4x$	$A\cos 4x + B\sin 4x$
7. e^{5x}	Ae^{5x}
8. $(9x - 2)e^{5x}$	$(Ax + B)e^{5x}$
9. x^2e^{5x}	$(Ax^2 + Bx + C)e^{5x}$
10. $e^{3x}\sin 4x$	$Ae^{3x}\cos 4x + Be^{3x}\sin 4x$
11. $5x^2\sin 4x$	$(Ax^2 + Bx + C)\cos 4x + (Ex^2 + Fx + G)\sin 4x$
12. $xe^{3x}\cos 4x$	$(Ax + B)e^{3x}\cos 4x + (Cx + E)e^{3x}\sin 4x$

EXAMPLE 5 Forms of Particular Solutions—Case I

Determine the form of a particular solution of

(a) $y'' - 8y' + 25y = 5x^3e^{-x} - 7e^{-x}$ **(b)** $y'' + 4y = x\cos x$

SOLUTION **(a)** We can write $g(x) = (5x^3 - 7)e^{-x}$. Using entry 9 in Table 4.4.1 as a model, we assume a particular solution of the form

$$y_p = (Ax^3 + Bx^2 + Cx + E)e^{-x}.$$

Note that there is no duplication between the terms in y_p and the terms in the complementary function $y_c = e^{4x}(c_1\cos 3x + c_2\sin 3x)$.

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

(b) The function $g(x) = x\cos x$ is similar to entry 11 in Table 4.4.1 except, of course, that we use a linear rather than a quadratic polynomial and cos x and sin x instead of cos $4x$ and sin $4x$ in the form of y_p:

$$y_p = (Ax + B)\cos x + (Cx + E)\sin x.$$

Again observe that there is no duplication of terms between y_p and $y_c = c_1\cos 2x + c_2\sin 2x$.

If $g(x)$ consists of a sum of, say, m terms of the kind listed in the table, then (as in Example 3) the assumption for a particular solution y_p consists of the sum of the trial forms $y_{p_1}, y_{p_2}, \ldots, y_{p_m}$ corresponding to these terms:

$$y_p = y_{p_1} + y_{p_2} + \cdots + y_{p_m}.$$

The foregoing sentence can be put another way.

Form Rule for Case I *The form of y_p is a linear combination of all linearly independent functions that are generated by repeated differentiations of $g(x)$.*

EXAMPLE 6 Forming y_p by Superposition—Case I

Determine the form of a particular solution of

$$y'' - 9y' + 14y = 3x^2 - 5\sin 2x + 7xe^{6x}.$$

SOLUTION

Corresponding to $3x^2$ we assume $\quad y_{p_1} = Ax^2 + Bx + C.$

Corresponding to $-5\sin 2x$ we assume $\quad y_{p_2} = E\cos 2x + F\sin 2x.$

Corresponding to $7xe^{6x}$ we assume $\quad y_{p_3} = (Gx + H)e^{6x}.$

The assumption for the particular solution is then

$$y_p = y_{p_1} + y_{p_2} + y_{p_3} = Ax^2 + Bx + C + E\cos 2x + F\sin 2x + (Gx + H)e^{6x}.$$

No term in this assumption duplicates a term in $y_c = c_1e^{2x} + c_2e^{7x}$.

Case II A function in the assumed particular solution is also a solution of the associated homogeneous differential equation.

The next example is similar to Example 4.

EXAMPLE 7 Particular Solution—Case II

Find a particular solution of $y'' - 2y' + y = e^x$.

SOLUTION The complementary function is $y_c = c_1e^x + c_2xe^x$. As in Example 4, the assumption $y_p = Ae^x$ will fail, since it is apparent from y_c that e^x is a solution of the associated homogeneous equation $y'' - 2y' + y = 0$. Moreover, we will not be able to find a particular solution of the form $y_p = Axe^x$, since the term xe^x is also duplicated in y_c. We next try

$$y_p = Ax^2e^x.$$

Substituting into the given differential equation yields $2Ae^x = e^x$, so $A = \frac{1}{2}$. Thus a particular solution is $y_p = \frac{1}{2}x^2e^x$.

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Suppose again that $g(x)$ consists of m terms of the kind given in Table 4.4.1, and suppose further that the usual assumption for a particular solution is

$$y_p = y_{p_1} + y_{p_2} + \cdots + y_{p_m},$$

where the y_{p_i}, $i = 1, 2, \ldots, m$ are the trial particular solution forms corresponding to these terms. Under the circumstances described in Case II, we can make up the following general rule.

Multiplication Rule for Case II *If any y_{p_i} contains terms that duplicate terms in y_c, then that y_{p_i} must be multiplied by x^n, where n is the smallest positive integer that eliminates that duplication.*

EXAMPLE 8 An Initial-Value Problem

Solve $y'' + y = 4x + 10 \sin x$, $y(\pi) = 0$, $y'(\pi) = 2$.

SOLUTION The solution of the associated homogeneous equation $y'' + y = 0$ is $y_c = c_1 \cos x + c_2 \sin x$. Because $g(x) = 4x + 10 \sin x$ is the sum of a linear polynomial and a sine function, our normal assumption for y_p, from entries 2 and 5 of Table 4.4.1, would be the sum of $y_{p_1} = Ax + B$ and $y_{p_2} = C \cos x + E \sin x$:

$$y_p = Ax + B + C \cos x + E \sin x. \tag{5}$$

But there is an obvious duplication of the terms $\cos x$ and $\sin x$ in this assumed form and two terms in the complementary function. This duplication can be eliminated by simply multiplying y_{p_2} by x. Instead of (5) we now use

$$y_p = Ax + B + Cx \cos x + Ex \sin x. \tag{6}$$

Differentiating this expression and substituting the results into the differential equation gives

$$y_p'' + y_p = Ax + B - 2C \sin x + 2E \cos x = 4x + 10 \sin x,$$

and so $A = 4$, $B = 0$, $-2C = 10$, and $2E = 0$. The solutions of the system are immediate: $A = 4$, $B = 0$, $C = -5$, and $E = 0$. Therefore from (6) we obtain $y_p = 4x - 5x \cos x$. The general solution of the given equation is

$$y = y_c + y_p = c_1 \cos x + c_2 \sin x + 4x - 5x \cos x.$$

We now apply the prescribed initial conditions to the general solution of the equation. First, $y(\pi) = c_1 \cos \pi + c_2 \sin \pi + 4\pi - 5\pi \cos \pi = 0$ yields $c_1 = 9\pi$, since $\cos \pi = -1$ and $\sin \pi = 0$. Next, from the derivative

$$y' = -9\pi \sin x + c_2 \cos x + 4 + 5x \sin x - 5 \cos x$$

and $$y'(\pi) = -9\pi \sin \pi + c_2 \cos \pi + 4 + 5\pi \sin \pi - 5 \cos \pi = 2$$

we find $c_2 = 7$. The solution of the initial-value is then

$$y = 9\pi \cos x + 7 \sin x + 4x - 5x \cos x.$$

EXAMPLE 9 Using the Multiplication Rule

Solve $y'' - 6y' + 9y = 6x^2 + 2 - 12e^{3x}$.

SOLUTION The complementary function is $y_c = c_1 e^{3x} + c_2 x e^{3x}$. And so, based on entries 3 and 7 of Table 4.4.1, the usual assumption for a particular solution would be

$$y_p = \underbrace{Ax^2 + Bx + C}_{y_{p_1}} + \underbrace{Ee^{3x}}_{y_{p_2}}.$$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Inspection of these functions shows that the one term in y_{p_2} is duplicated in y_c. If we multiply y_{p_2} by x, we note that the term xe^{3x} is still part of y_c. But multiplying y_{p_2} by x^2 eliminates all duplications. Thus the operative form of a particular solution is

$$y_p = Ax^2 + Bx + C + Ex^2e^{3x}.$$

Differentiating this last form, substituting into the differential equation, and collecting like terms gives

$$y_p'' - 6y_p' + 9y_p = 9Ax^2 + (-12A + 9B)x + 2A - 6B + 9C + 2Ee^{3x} = 6x^2 + 2 - 12e^{3x}.$$

It follows from this identity that $A = \frac{2}{3}$, $B = \frac{8}{9}$, $C = \frac{2}{3}$, and $E = -6$. Hence the general solution $y = y_c + y_p$ is $y = c_1e^{3x} + c_2xe^{3x} + \frac{2}{3}x^2 + \frac{8}{9}x + \frac{2}{3} - 6x^2e^{3x}$. ☰

EXAMPLE 10 Third-Order DE—Case I

Solve $y''' + y'' = e^x \cos x$.

SOLUTION From the characteristic equation $m^3 + m^2 = 0$ we find $m_1 = m_2 = 0$ and $m_3 = -1$. Hence the complementary function of the equation is $y_c = c_1 + c_2x + c_3e^{-x}$. With $g(x) = e^x \cos x$, we see from entry 10 of Table 4.4.1 that we should assume that

$$y_p = Ae^x \cos x + Be^x \sin x.$$

Because there are no functions in y_p that duplicate functions in the complementary solution, we proceed in the usual manner. From

$$y_p''' + y_p'' = (-2A + 4B)e^x \cos x + (-4A - 2B)e^x \sin x = e^x \cos x$$

we get $-2A + 4B = 1$ and $-4A - 2B = 0$. This system gives $A = -\frac{1}{10}$ and $B = \frac{1}{5}$, so a particular solution is $y_p = -\frac{1}{10}e^x \cos x + \frac{1}{5}e^x \sin x$. The general solution of the equation is

$$y = y_c + y_p = c_1 + c_2x + c_3e^{-x} - \frac{1}{10}e^x \cos x + \frac{1}{5}e^x \sin x.$$ ☰

EXAMPLE 11 Fourth-Order DE—Case II

Determine the form of a particular solution of $y^{(4)} + y''' = 1 - x^2e^{-x}$.

SOLUTION Comparing $y_c = c_1 + c_2x + c_3x^2 + c_4e^{-x}$ with our normal assumption for a particular solution

$$y_p = \underbrace{A}_{y_{p_1}} + \underbrace{Bx^2e^{-x} + Cxe^{-x} + Ee^{-x}}_{y_{p_2}},$$

we see that the duplications between y_c and y_p are eliminated when y_{p_1} is multiplied by x^3 and y_{p_2} is multiplied by x. Thus the correct assumption for a particular solution is $y_p = Ax^3 + Bx^3e^{-x} + Cx^2e^{-x} + Exe^{-x}$. ☰

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

REMARKS

(*i*) In Problems 27–36 in Exercises 4.4 you are asked to solve initial-value problems, and in Problems 37–40 you are asked to solve boundary-value problems. As illustrated in Example 8, be sure to apply the initial conditions or the boundary conditions to the general solution $y = y_c + y_p$. Students often make the mistake of applying these conditions only to the complementary function y_c because it is that part of the solution that contains the constants $c_1, c_2, \ldots, c_n$.

(*ii*) From the "Form Rule for Case I" on page 144 of this section you see why the method of undetermined coefficients is not well suited to nonhomogeneous linear DEs when the input function $g(x)$ is something other than one of the four basic types highlighted in color on page 140. For example, if $P(x)$ is a polynomial, then continued differentiation of $P(x)e^{\alpha x}\sin\beta x$ will generate an independent set containing only a *finit* number of functions—all of the same type, namely, a polynomial times $e^{\alpha x}\sin\beta x$ or a polynomial times $e^{\alpha x}\cos\beta x$. On the other hand, repeated differentiation of input functions such as $g(x) = \ln x$ or $g(x) = \tan^{-1}x$ generates an independent set containing an *infinit* number of functions:

$$\textit{derivatives of } \ln x: \quad \frac{1}{x}, \frac{-1}{x^2}, \frac{2}{x^3}, \ldots,$$

$$\textit{derivatives of } \tan^{-1}x: \quad \frac{1}{1+x^2}, \frac{-2x}{(1+x^2)^2}, \frac{-2+6x^2}{(1+x^2)^3}, \ldots.$$

EXERCISES 4.4

Answers to selected odd-numbered problems begin on page ANS-5.

In Problems 1–26 solve the given differential equation by undetermined coefficients.

1. $y'' + 3y' + 2y = 6$

2. $4y'' + 9y = 15$

3. $y'' - 10y' + 25y = 30x + 3$

4. $y'' + y' - 6y = 2x$

5. $\frac{1}{4}y'' + y' + y = x^2 - 2x$

6. $y'' - 8y' + 20y = 100x^2 - 26xe^x$

7. $y'' + 3y = -48x^2e^{3x}$

8. $4y'' - 4y' - 3y = \cos 2x$

9. $y'' - y' = -3$

10. $y'' + 2y' = 2x + 5 - e^{-2x}$

11. $y'' - y' + \frac{1}{4}y = 3 + e^{x/2}$

12. $y'' - 16y = 2e^{4x}$

13. $y'' + 4y = 3\sin 2x$

14. $y'' - 4y = (x^2 - 3)\sin 2x$

15. $y'' + y = 2x\sin x$

16. $y'' - 5y' = 2x^3 - 4x^2 - x + 6$

17. $y'' - 2y' + 5y = e^x\cos 2x$

18. $y'' - 2y' + 2y = e^{2x}(\cos x - 3\sin x)$

19. $y'' + 2y' + y = \sin x + 3\cos 2x$

20. $y'' + 2y' - 24y = 16 - (x + 2)e^{4x}$

21. $y''' - 6y'' = 3 - \cos x$

22. $y''' - 2y'' - 4y' + 8y = 6xe^{2x}$

23. $y''' - 3y'' + 3y' - y = x - 4e^x$

24. $y''' - y'' - 4y' + 4y = 5 - e^x + e^{2x}$

25. $y^{(4)} + 2y'' + y = (x - 1)^2$

26. $y^{(4)} - y'' = 4x + 2xe^{-x}$

In Problems 27–36 solve the given initial-value problem.

27. $y'' + 4y = -2, \quad y(\pi/8) = \frac{1}{2}, y'(\pi/8) = 2$

28. $2y'' + 3y' - 2y = 14x^2 - 4x - 11, \quad y(0) = 0, y'(0) = 0$

29. $5y'' + y' = -6x, \quad y(0) = 0, y'(0) = -10$

30. $y'' + 4y' + 4y = (3 + x)e^{-2x}, \quad y(0) = 2, y'(0) = 5$

31. $y'' + 4y' + 5y = 35e^{-4x}, \quad y(0) = -3, y'(0) = 1$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

32. $y'' - y = \cosh x, \quad y(0) = 2, y'(0) = 12$

33. $\dfrac{d^2x}{dt^2} + \omega^2 x = F_0 \sin \omega t, \quad x(0) = 0, x'(0) = 0$

34. $\dfrac{d^2x}{dt^2} + \omega^2 x = F_0 \cos \quad t, \quad x(0) = 0, x'(0) = 0$

35. $y''' - 2y'' + y' = 2 - 24e^x + 40e^{5x}, \quad y(0) = \frac{1}{2}, y'(0) = \frac{5}{2}, y''(0) = -\frac{9}{2}$

36. $y''' + 8y = 2x - 5 + 8e^{-2x}, \quad y(0) = -5, y'(0) = 3, y''(0) = -4$

In Problems 37–40 solve the given boundary-value problem.

37. $y'' + y = x^2 + 1, \quad y(0) = 5, y(1) = 0$

38. $y'' - 2y' + 2y = 2x - 2, \quad y(0) = 0, y(\pi) = \pi$

39. $y'' + 3y = 6x, \quad y(0) = 0, y(1) + y'(1) = 0$

40. $y'' + 3y = 6x, \quad y(0) + y'(0) = 0, y(1) = 0$

In Problems 41 and 42 solve the given initial-value problem in which the input function $g(x)$ is discontinuous. [*Hint*: Solve each problem on two intervals, and then find a solution so that y and y' are continuous at $x = \pi/2$ (Problem 41) and at $x = \pi$ (Problem 42).]

41. $y'' + 4y = g(x), \quad y(0) = 1, y'(0) = 2,$ where

$$g(x) = \begin{cases} \sin x, & 0 \le x \le \pi/2 \\ 0, & x > \pi/2 \end{cases}$$

42. $y'' - 2y' + 10y = g(x), \quad y(0) = 0, y'(0) = 0,$ where

$$g(x) = \begin{cases} 20, & 0 \le x \le \pi \\ 0, & x > \pi \end{cases}$$

Discussion Problems

43. Consider the differential equation $ay'' + by' + cy = e^{kx}$, where a, b, c, and k are constants. The auxiliary equation of the associated homogeneous equation is $am^2 + bm + c = 0$.

(a) If k is not a root of the auxiliary equation, show that we can find a particular solution of the form $y_p = Ae^{kx}$, where $A = 1/(ak^2 + bk + c)$.

(b) If k is a root of the auxiliary equation of multiplicity one, show that we can find a particular solution of the form $y_p = Axe^{kx}$, where $A = 1/(2ak + b)$. Explain how we know that $k \neq -b/(2a)$.

(c) If k is a root of the auxiliary equation of multiplicity two, show that we can find a particular solution of the form $y = Ax^2e^{kx}$, where $A = 1/(2a)$.

44. Discuss how the method of this section can be used to find a particular solution of $y'' + y = \sin x \cos 2x$. Carry out your idea.

45. Without solving, match a solution curve of $y'' + y = f(x)$ shown in the figure with one of the following functions:

(*i*) $f(x) = 1$, (*ii*) $f(x) = e^{-x}$,
(*iii*) $f(x) = e^x$, (*iv*) $f(x) = \sin 2x$,
(*v*) $f(x) = e^x \sin x$, (*vi*) $f(x) = \sin x$.

Briefly discuss your reasoning.

(a)

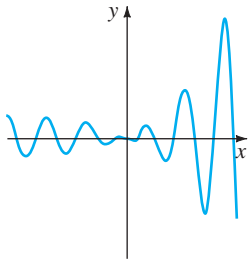


FIGURE 4.4.1 Solution curve

(b)

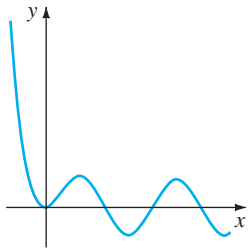


FIGURE 4.4.2 Solution curve

(c)

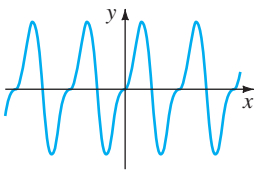


FIGURE 4.4.3 Solution curve

(d)

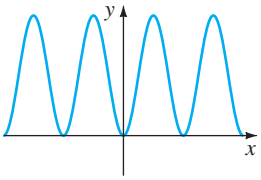


FIGURE 4.4.4 Solution curve

Computer Lab Assignments

In Problems 46 and 47 find a particular solution of the given differential equation. Use a CAS as an aid in carrying out differentiations, simplifications, and algebra.

46. $y'' - 4y' + 8y = (2x^2 - 3x)e^{2x}\cos 2x + (10x^2 - x - 1)e^{2x}\sin 2x$

47. $y^{(4)} + 2y'' + y = 2\cos x - 3x \sin x$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

4.5 UNDETERMINED COEFFICIENTS—ANNIHILATOR APPROACH

REVIEW MATERIAL

- Review Theorems 4.1.6 and 4.1.7 (Section 4.1)

INTRODUCTION We saw in Section 4.1 that an nth-order differential equation can be written

$$a_nD^ny + a_{n-1}D^{n-1}y + \cdots + a_1Dy + a_0y = g(x), \tag{1}$$

where $D^ky = d^ky/dx^k$, $k = 0, 1, \ldots, n$. When it suits our purpose, (1) is also written as $L(y) = g(x)$, where L denotes the linear nth-order differential, or polynomial, operator

$$a_nD^n + a_{n-1}D^{n-1} + \cdots + a_1D + a_0. \tag{2}$$

Not only is the operator notation a helpful shorthand, but also on a very practical level the application of differential operators enables us to justify the somewhat mind-numbing rules for determining the form of particular solution y_p that were presented in the preceding section. In this section there are no special rules; the form of y_p follows almost automatically once we have found an appropriate linear differential operator that *annihilates* $g(x)$ in (1). Before investigating how this is done, we need to examine two concepts.

Factoring Operators When the coefficients a_i, $i = 0, 1, \ldots, n$ are real constants, a linear differential operator (1) can be factored whenever the characteristic polynomial $a_nm^n + a_{n-1}m^{n-1} + \cdots + a_1m + a_0$ factors. In other words, if r_1 is a root of the auxiliary equation

$$a_nm^n + a_{n-1}m^{n-1} + \cdots + a_1m + a_0 = 0,$$

then $L = (D - r_1)\,P(D)$, where the polynomial expression $P(D)$ is a linear differential operator of order $n - 1$. For example, if we treat D as an algebraic quantity, then the operator $D^2 + 5D + 6$ can be factored as $(D + 2)(D + 3)$ or as $(D + 3)(D + 2)$. Thus if a function $y = f(x)$ possesses a second derivative, then

$$(D^2 + 5D + 6)y = (D + 2)(D + 3)y = (D + 3)(D + 2)y.$$

This illustrates a general property:

Factors of a linear differential operator with constant coefficients commute

A differential equation such as $y'' + 4y' + 4y = 0$ can be written as

$$(D^2 + 4D + 4)y = 0 \quad \text{or} \quad (D + 2)(D + 2)y = 0 \quad \text{or} \quad (D + 2)^2y = 0.$$

Annihilator Operator If L is a linear differential operator with constant coefficients and f is a sufficiently differentiable function such that

$$L(f(x)) = 0,$$

then L is said to be an **annihilator** of the function. For example, a constant function $y = k$ is annihilated by D, since $Dk = 0$. The function $y = x$ is annihilated by the differential operator D^2 since the first and second derivatives of x are 1 and 0, respectively. Similarly, $D^3x^2 = 0$, and so on.

The differential operator D^n annihilates each of the functions

$$1, \quad x, \quad x^2, \quad \ldots, \quad x^{n-1}. \tag{3}$$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

As an immediate consequence of (3) and the fact that differentiation can be done term by term, a polynomial

$$c_0 + c_1x + c_2x^2 + \cdots + c_{n-1}x^{n-1} \tag{4}$$

can be annihilated by finding an operator that annihilates the highest power of x.

The functions that are annihilated by a linear nth-order differential operator L are simply those functions that can be obtained from the general solution of the homogeneous differential equation $L(y) = 0$.

The differential operator $(D - \alpha)^n$ annihilates each of the functions

$$e^{\alpha x}, \quad xe^{\alpha x}, \quad x^2e^{\alpha x}, \quad \ldots, \quad x^{n-1}e^{\alpha x}. \tag{5}$$

To see this, note that the auxiliary equation of the homogeneous equation $(D - \alpha)^n y = 0$ is $(m - \alpha)^n = 0$. Since α is a root of multiplicity n, the general solution is

$$y = c_1e^{\alpha x} + c_2xe^{\alpha x} + \cdots + c_nx^{n-1}e^{\alpha x}. \tag{6}$$

EXAMPLE 1 Annihilator Operators

Find a differential operator that annihilates the given function.

(a) $1 - 5x^2 + 8x^3$ **(b)** e^{-3x} **(c)** $4e^{2x} - 10xe^{2x}$

SOLUTION **(a)** From (3) we know that $D^4x^3 = 0$, so it follows from (4) that

$$D^4(1 - 5x^2 + 8x^3) = 0.$$

(b) From (5), with $\alpha = -3$ and $n = 1$, we see that

$$(D + 3)e^{-3x} = 0.$$

(c) From (5) and (6), with $\alpha = 2$ and $n = 2$, we have

$$(D - 2)^2(4e^{2x} - 10xe^{2x}) = 0.$$

When α and β, $\beta > 0$ are real numbers, the quadratic formula reveals that $[m^2 - 2\alpha m + (\alpha^2 + \beta^2)]^n = 0$ has complex roots $\alpha + i\beta$, $\alpha - i\beta$, both of multiplicity n. From the discussion at the end of Section 4.3 we have the next result.

The differential operator $[D^2 - 2\alpha D + (\alpha^2 + \beta^2)]^n$ annihilates each of the functions

$$\begin{aligned} &e^{\alpha x}\cos\beta x, \quad xe^{\alpha x}\cos\beta x, \quad x^2e^{\alpha x}\cos\beta x, \quad \ldots, \quad x^{n-1}e^{\alpha x}\cos\beta x, \\ &e^{\alpha x}\sin\beta x, \quad xe^{\alpha x}\sin\beta x, \quad x^2e^{\alpha x}\sin\beta x, \quad \ldots, \quad x^{n-1}e^{\alpha x}\sin\beta x. \end{aligned} \tag{7}$$

EXAMPLE 2 Annihilator Operator

Find a differential operator that annihilates $5e^{-x}\cos 2x - 9e^{-x}\sin 2x$.

SOLUTION Inspection of the functions $e^{-x}\cos 2x$ and $e^{-x}\sin 2x$ shows that $\alpha = -1$ and $\beta = 2$. Hence from (7) we conclude that $D^2 + 2D + 5$ will annihilate each function. Since $D^2 + 2D + 5$ is a linear operator, it will annihilate *any* linear combination of these functions such as $5e^{-x}\cos 2x - 9e^{-x}\sin 2x$.

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

When $\alpha = 0$ and $n = 1$, a special case of (7) is

$$(D^2 + \beta^2)\begin{Bmatrix}\cos \beta x \\ \sin \beta x\end{Bmatrix} = 0. \tag{8}$$

For example, $D^2 + 16$ will annihilate any linear combination of $\sin 4x$ and $\cos 4x$.

We are often interested in annihilating the sum of two or more functions. As we have just seen in Examples 1 and 2, if L is a linear differential operator such that $L(y_1) = 0$ and $L(y_2) = 0$, then L will annihilate the linear combination $c_1y_1(x) + c_2y_2(x)$. This is a direct consequence of Theorem 4.1.2. Let us now suppose that L_1 and L_2 are linear differential operators with constant coefficients such that L_1 annihilates $y_1(x)$ and L_2 annihilates $y_2(x)$, but $L_1(y_2) \neq 0$ and $L_2(y_1) \neq 0$. Then the *product* of differential operators L_1L_2 annihilates the sum $c_1y_1(x) + c_2y_2(x)$. We can easily demonstrate this, using linearity and the fact that $L_1L_2 = L_2L_1$:

$$\begin{aligned} L_1L_2(y_1 + y_2) &= L_1L_2(y_1) + L_1L_2(y_2) \\ &= L_2L_1(y_1) + L_1L_2(y_2) \\ &= L_2\underbrace{[L_1(y_1)]}_{\text{zero}} + L_1\underbrace{[L_2(y_2)]}_{\text{zero}} = 0. \end{aligned}$$

For example, we know from (3) that D^2 annihilates $7 - x$ and from (8) that $D^2 + 16$ annihilates $\sin 4x$. Therefore the product of operators $D^2(D^2 + 16)$ will annihilate the linear combination $7 - x + 6 \sin 4x$.

Note The differential operator that annihilates a function is not unique. We saw in part (b) of Example 1 that $D + 3$ will annihilate e^{-3x}, but so will differential operators of higher order as long as $D + 3$ is one of the factors of the operator. For example, $(D + 3)(D + 1)$, $(D + 3)^2$, and $D^3(D + 3)$ all annihilate e^{-3x}. (Verify this.) As a matter of course, when we seek a differential annihilator for a function $y = f(x)$, we want the operator of *lowest possible order* that does the job.

Undetermined Coefficient This brings us to the point of the preceding discussion. Suppose that $L(y) = g(x)$ is a linear differential equation with constant coefficients and that the input $g(x)$ consists of finite sums and products of the functions listed in (3), (5), and (7)—that is, $g(x)$ is a linear combination of functions of the form

$$k \text{ (constant)}, \quad x^m, \quad x^m e^{\alpha x}, \quad x^m e^{\alpha x}\cos \beta x, \quad \text{and} \quad x^m e^{\alpha x}\sin \beta x,$$

where m is a nonnegative integer and α and β are real numbers. We now know that such a function $g(x)$ can be annihilated by a differential operator L_1 of lowest order, consisting of a product of the operators D^n, $(D - \alpha)^n$, and $(D^2 - 2\alpha D + \alpha^2 + \beta^2)^n$. Applying L_1 to both sides of the equation $L(y) = g(x)$ yields $L_1L(y) = L_1(g(x)) = 0$. By solving the *homogeneous higher-order* equation $L_1L(y) = 0$, we can discover the *form* of a particular solution y_p for the original *nonhomogeneous* equation $L(y) = g(x)$. We then substitute this assumed form into $L(y) = g(x)$ to find an explicit particular solution. This procedure for determining y_p, called the **method of undetermined coefficients** is illustrated in the next several examples.

Before proceeding, recall that the general solution of a nonhomogeneous linear differential equation $L(y) = g(x)$ is $y = y_c + y_p$, where y_c is the complementary function—that is, the general solution of the associated homogeneous equation $L(y) = 0$. The general solution of each equation $L(y) = g(x)$ is defined on the interval $(-\infty, \quad)$.

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

EXAMPLE 3 General Solution Using Undetermined Coefficient

Solve $y'' + 3y' + 2y = 4x^2$. (9)

SOLUTION **Step 1.** First, we solve the homogeneous equation $y'' + 3y' + 2y = 0$. Then, from the auxiliary equation $m^2 + 3m + 2 = (m + 1)(m + 2) = 0$ we find $m_1 = -1$ and $m_2 = -2$, and so the complementary function is

$$y_c = c_1e^{-x} + c_2e^{-2x}.$$

Step 2. Now, since $4x^2$ is annihilated by the differential operator D^3, we see that $D^3(D^2 + 3D + 2)y = 4D^3x^2$ is the same as

$$D^3(D^2 + 3D + 2)y = 0. \tag{10}$$

The auxiliary equation of the fifth-order equation in (10),

$$m^3(m^2 + 3m + 2) = 0 \quad \text{or} \quad m^3(m + 1)(m + 2) = 0,$$

has roots $m_1 = m_2 = m_3 = 0$, $m_4 = -1$, and $m_5 = -2$. Thus its general solution must be

$$y = c_1 + c_2x + c_3x^2 + \boxed{c_4e^{-x} + c_5e^{-2x}}. \tag{11}$$

The terms in the shaded box in (11) constitute the complementary function of the original equation (9). We can then argue that a particular solution y_p of (9) should also satisfy equation (10). This means that the terms remaining in (11) must be the basic form of y_p:

$$y_p = A + Bx + Cx^2, \tag{12}$$

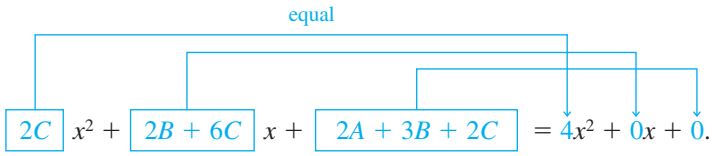
where, for convenience, we have replaced c_1, c_2, and c_3 by A, B, and C, respectively. For (12) to be a particular solution of (9), it is necessary to find *specific* coefficients A, B, and C. Differentiating (12), we have

$$y_p' = B + 2Cx, \qquad y_p'' = 2C,$$

and substitution into (9) then gives

$$y_p'' + 3y_p' + 2y_p = 2C + 3B + 6Cx + 2A + 2Bx + 2Cx^2 = 4x^2.$$

Because the last equation is supposed to be an identity, the coefficients of like powers of x must be equal:



That is $2C = 4, \quad 2B + 6C = 0, \quad 2A + 3B + 2C = 0.$ (13)

Solving the equations in (13) gives $A = 7$, $B = -6$, and $C = 2$. Thus $y_p = 7 - 6x + 2x^2$.

Step 3. The general solution of the equation in (9) is $y = y_c + y_p$ or

$$y = c_1e^{-x} + c_2e^{-2x} + 7 - 6x + 2x^2.$$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

EXAMPLE 4 General Solution Using Undetermined Coefficient

Solve $y'' - 3y' = 8e^{3x} + 4 \sin x.$ (14)

SOLUTION **Step 1.** The auxiliary equation for the associated homogeneous equation $y'' - 3y' = 0$ is $m^2 - 3m = m(m - 3) = 0$, so $y_c = c_1 + c_2e^{3x}$.

Step 2. Now, since $(D - 3)e^{3x} = 0$ and $(D^2 + 1) \sin x = 0$, we apply the differential operator $(D - 3)(D^2 + 1)$ to both sides of (14):

$$(D - 3)(D^2 + 1)(D^2 - 3D)y = 0. \tag{15}$$

The auxiliary equation of (15) is

$$(m - 3)(m^2 + 1)(m^2 - 3m) = 0 \quad \text{or} \quad m(m - 3)^2(m^2 + 1) = 0.$$

Thus $$y = c_1 + c_2e^{3x} + c_3xe^{3x} + c_4 \cos x + c_5 \sin x.$$

After excluding the linear combination of terms in the box that corresponds to y_c, we arrive at the form of y_p:

$$y_p = Axe^{3x} + B \cos x + C \sin x.$$

Substituting y_p in (14) and simplifying yield

$$y_p'' - 3y_p' = 3Ae^{3x} + (-B - 3C) \cos x + (3B - C) \sin x = 8e^{3x} + 4 \sin x.$$

Equating coefficients gives $3A = 8$, $-B - 3C = 0$, and $3B - C = 4$. We find $A = \frac{8}{3}$, $B = \frac{6}{5}$, and $C = -\frac{2}{5}$, and consequently,

$$y_p = \frac{8}{3}xe^{3x} + \frac{6}{5} \cos x - \frac{2}{5} \sin x.$$

Step 3. The general solution of (14) is then

$$y = c_1 + c_2e^{3x} + \frac{8}{3}xe^{3x} + \frac{6}{5} \cos x - \frac{2}{5} \sin x.$$

EXAMPLE 5 General Solution Using Undetermined Coefficient

Solve $y'' + y = x \cos x - \cos x.$ (16)

SOLUTION The complementary function is $y_c = c_1 \cos x + c_2 \sin x$. Now by comparing $\cos x$ and $x \cos x$ with the functions in the first row of (7), we see that $\alpha = 0$ and $n = 1$, and so $(D^2 + 1)^2$ is an annihilator for the right-hand member of the equation in (16). Applying this operator to the differential equation gives

$$(D^2 + 1)^2 (D^2 + 1)y = 0 \quad \text{or} \quad (D^2 + 1)^3y = 0.$$

Since i and $-i$ are both complex roots of multiplicity 3 of the auxiliary equation of the last differential equation, we conclude that

$$y = c_1 \cos x + c_2 \sin x + c_3x \cos x + c_4x \sin x + c_5x^2 \cos x + c_6x^2 \sin x.$$

We substitute

$$y_p = Ax \cos x + Bx \sin x + Cx^2 \cos x + Ex^2 \sin x$$

into (16) and simplify:

$$\begin{aligned} y_p'' + y_p &= 4\,Ex \cos x - 4\,Cx \sin x + (2B + 2C) \cos x + (-2A + 2E) \sin x \\ &= x \cos x - \cos x. \end{aligned}$$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Equating coefficients gives the equations $4E = 1$, $-4C = 0$, $2B + 2C = -1$, and $-2A + 2E = 0$, from which we find $A = \frac{1}{4}$, $B = -\frac{1}{2}$, $C = 0$, and $E = \frac{1}{4}$. Hence the general solution of (16) is

$$y = c_1 \cos x + c_2 \sin x + \frac{1}{4} x \cos x - \frac{1}{2} x \sin x + \frac{1}{4} x^2 \sin x.$$

EXAMPLE 6 Form of a Particular Solution

Determine the form of a particular solution for

$$y'' - 2y' + y = 10e^{-2x} \cos x. \tag{17}$$

SOLUTION The complementary function for the given equation is $y_c = c_1 e^x + c_2 x e^x$.

Now from (7), with $\alpha = -2$, $\beta = 1$, and $n = 1$, we know that

$$(D^2 + 4D + 5)e^{-2x} \cos x = 0.$$

Applying the operator $D^2 + 4D + 5$ to (17) gives

$$(D^2 + 4D + 5)(D^2 - 2D + 1)y = 0. \tag{18}$$

Since the roots of the auxiliary equation of (18) are $-2 - i$, $-2 + i$, 1, and 1, we see from

$$y = c_1 e^x + c_2 x e^x + c_3 e^{-2x} \cos x + c_4 e^{-2x} \sin x$$

that a particular solution of (17) can be found with the form

$$y_p = Ae^{-2x} \cos x + Be^{-2x} \sin x.$$

EXAMPLE 7 Form of a Particular Solution

Determine the form of a particular solution for

$$y''' - 4y'' + 4y' = 5x^2 - 6x + 4x^2 e^{2x} + 3e^{5x}. \tag{19}$$

SOLUTION Observe that

$$D^3(5x^2 - 6x) = 0, \qquad (D - 2)^3 x^2 e^{2x} = 0, \qquad \text{and} \qquad (D - 5)e^{5x} = 0.$$

Therefore $D^3(D - 2)^3(D - 5)$ applied to (19) gives

$$D^3(D - 2)^3(D - 5)(D^3 - 4D^2 + 4D)y = 0$$

or

$$D^4(D - 2)^5(D - 5)y = 0.$$

The roots of the auxiliary equation for the last differential equation are easily seen to be 0, 0, 0, 0, 2, 2, 2, 2, 2, and 5. Hence

$$y = c_1 + c_2 x + c_3 x^2 + c_4 x^3 + c_5 e^{2x} + c_6 x e^{2x} + c_7 x^2 e^{2x} + c_8 x^3 e^{2x} + c_9 x^4 e^{2x} + c_{10} e^{5x}. \tag{20}$$

Because the linear combination $c_1 + c_5 e^{2x} + c_6 x e^{2x}$ corresponds to the complementary function of (19), the remaining terms in (20) give the form of a particular solution of the differential equation:

$$y_p = Ax + Bx^2 + Cx^3 + Ex^2 e^{2x} + Fx^3 e^{2x} + Gx^4 e^{2x} + He^{5x}.$$

Summary of the Method For your convenience the method of undetermined coefficients is summarized as follows.

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

UNDETERMINED COEFFICIENTS—ANNIHILATOR APPROACH

The differential equation $L(y) = g(x)$ has constant coefficients, and the function $g(x)$ consists of finite sums and products of constants, polynomials, exponential functions $e^{\alpha x}$, sines, and cosines.

(*i*) Find the complementary solution y_c for the homogeneous equation $L(y) = 0$.

(*ii*) Operate on both sides of the nonhomogeneous equation $L(y) = g(x)$ with a differential operator L_1 that annihilates the function $g(x)$.

(*iii*) Find the general solution of the higher-order homogeneous differential equation $L_1L(y) = 0$.

(*iv*) Delete from the solution in step (*iii*) all those terms that are duplicated in the complementary solution y_c found in step (*i*). Form a linear combination y_p of the terms that remain. This is the form of a particular solution of $L(y) = g(x)$.

(*v*) Substitute y_p found in step (*iv*) into $L(y) = g(x)$. Match coefficients of the various functions on each side of the equality, and solve the resulting system of equations for the unknown coefficients in y_p.

(*vi*) With the particular solution found in step (*v*), form the general solution $y = y_c + y_p$ of the given differential equation.

REMARKS

The method of undetermined coefficients is not applicable to linear differential equations with variable coefficients nor is it applicable to linear equations with constant coefficients when $g(x)$ is a function such as

$$g(x) = \ln x, \qquad g(x) = \frac{1}{x}, \qquad g(x) = \tan x, \qquad g(x) = \sin^{-1} x,$$

and so on. Differential equations in which the input $g(x)$ is a function of this last kind will be considered in the next section.

EXERCISES 4.5

Answers to selected odd-numbered problems begin on page ANS-5.

In Problems 1–10 write the given differential equation in the form $L(y) = g(x)$, where L is a linear differential operator with constant coefficients. If possible, factor L.

1. $9y'' - 4y = \sin x$

2. $y'' - 5y = x^2 - 2x$

3. $y'' - 4y' - 12y = x - 6$

4. $2y'' - 3y' - 2y = 1$

5. $y''' + 10y'' + 25y' = e^x$

6. $y''' + 4y' = e^x \cos 2x$

7. $y''' + 2y'' - 13y' + 10y = xe^{-x}$

8. $y''' + 4y'' + 3y' = x^2 \cos x - 3x$

9. $y^{(4)} + 8y' = 4$

10. $y^{(4)} - 8y'' + 16y = (x^3 - 2x)e^{4x}$

In Problems 11–14 verify that the given differential operator annihilates the indicated functions.

11. D^4; $y = 10x^3 - 2x$

12. $2D - 1$; $y = 4e^{x/2}$

13. $(D - 2)(D + 5)$; $y = e^{2x} + 3e^{-5x}$

14. $D^2 + 64$; $y = 2 \cos 8x - 5 \sin 8x$

In Problems 15–26 find a linear differential operator that annihilates the given function.

15. $1 + 6x - 2x^3$

16. $x^3(1 - 5x)$

17. $1 + 7e^{2x}$

18. $x + 3xe^{6x}$

19. $\cos 2x$

20. $1 + \sin x$

21. $13x + 9x^2 - \sin 4x$

22. $8x - \sin x + 10 \cos 5x$

23. $e^{-x} + 2xe^x - x^2e^x$

24. $(2 - e^x)^2$

25. $3 + e^x \cos 2x$

26. $e^{-x} \sin x - e^{2x} \cos x$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

In Problems 27–34 find linearly independent functions that are annihilated by the given differential operator.

27. D^5

28. $D^2 + 4D$

29. $(D - 6)(2D + 3)$

30. $D^2 - 9D - 36$

31. $D^2 + 5$

32. $D^2 - 6D + 10$

33. $D^3 - 10D^2 + 25D$

34. $D^2(D - 5)(D - 7)$

In Problems 35–64 solve the given differential equation by undetermined coefficients.

35. $y'' - 9y = 54$

36. $2y'' - 7y' + 5y = -29$

37. $y'' + y' = 3$

38. $y''' + 2y'' + y' = 10$

39. $y'' + 4y' + 4y = 2x + 6$

40. $y'' + 3y' = 4x - 5$

41. $y''' + y'' = 8x^2$

42. $y'' - 2y' + y = x^3 + 4x$

43. $y'' - y' - 12y = e^{4x}$

44. $y'' + 2y' + 2y = 5e^{6x}$

45. $y'' - 2y' - 3y = 4e^x - 9$

46. $y'' + 6y' + 8y = 3e^{-2x} + 2x$

47. $y'' + 25y = 6 \sin x$

48. $y'' + 4y = 4 \cos x + 3 \sin x - 8$

49. $y'' + 6y' + 9y = -xe^{4x}$

50. $y'' + 3y' - 10y = x(e^x + 1)$

51. $y'' - y = x^2e^x + 5$

52. $y'' + 2y' + y = x^2e^{-x}$

53. $y'' - 2y' + 5y = e^x \sin x$

54. $y'' + y' + \frac{1}{4}y = e^x(\sin 3x - \cos 3x)$

55. $y'' + 25y = 20 \sin 5x$

56. $y'' + y = 4 \cos x - \sin x$

57. $y'' + y' + y = x \sin x$

58. $y'' + 4y = \cos^2 x$

59. $y''' + 8y'' = -6x^2 + 9x + 2$

60. $y''' - y'' + y' - y = xe^x - e^{-x} + 7$

61. $y''' - 3y'' + 3y' - y = e^x - x + 16$

62. $2y''' - 3y'' - 3y' + 2y = (e^x + e^{-x})^2$

63. $y^{(4)} - 2y''' + y'' = e^x + 1$

64. $y^{(4)} - 4y'' = 5x^2 - e^{2x}$

In Problems 65–72 solve the given initial-value problem.

65. $y'' - 64y = 16, \quad y(0) = 1, y'(0) = 0$

66. $y'' + y' = x, \quad y(0) = 1, y'(0) = 0$

67. $y'' - 5y' = x - 2, \quad y(0) = 0, y'(0) = 2$

68. $y'' + 5y' - 6y = 10e^{2x}, \quad y(0) = 1, y'(0) = 1$

69. $y'' + y = 8 \cos 2x - 4 \sin x, \quad y(\pi/2) = -1, y'(\pi/2) = 0$

70. $y''' - 2y'' + y' = xe^x + 5, \quad y(0) = 2, y'(0) = 2, y''(0) = -1$

71. $y'' - 4y' + 8y = x^3, \quad y(0) = 2, y'(0) = 4$

72. $y^{(4)} - y''' = x + e^x, \quad y(0) = 0, y'(0) = 0, y''(0) = 0, y'''(0) = 0$

Discussion Problems

73. Suppose L is a linear differential operator that factors but has variable coefficients. Do the factors of L commute? Defend your answer.

4.6 VARIATION OF PARAMETERS

REVIEW MATERIAL

- Basic integration formulas and techniques from calculus
- Review Section 2.3

INTRODUCTION We pointed out in the discussions in Sections 4.4 and 4.5 that the method of undetermined coefficients has two inherent weaknesses that limit its wider application to linear equations: The DE must have constant coefficients and the input function $g(x)$ must be of the type listed in Table 4.4.1. In this section we examine a method for determining a particular solution y_p of a nonhomogeneous linear DE that has, in theory, no such restrictions on it. This method, due to the eminent astronomer and mathematician **Joseph Louis Lagrange** (1736–1813), is known as **variation of parameters**.

Before examining this powerful method for higher-order equations we revisit the solution of linear first-order differential equations that have been put into standard form. The discussion under the first heading in this section is optional and is intended to motivate the main discussion of this section that starts under the second heading. If pressed for time this motivational material could be assigned for reading.

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Linear First-Order DEs Revisited In Section 2.3 we saw that the general solution of a linear first-order differential equation $a_1(x)y' + a_0(x)y = g(x)$ can be found by first rewriting it in the standard form

$$\frac{dy}{dx} + P(x)y = f(x) \tag{1}$$

and assuming that $P(x)$ and $f(x)$are continuous on an common interval I. Using the integrating factor method, the general solution of (1) on the interval I, was found to be

See (4) of Section 2.3. ▶

$$y = c_1 e^{-\int P(x)dx} + e^{-\int P(x)dx} \int e^{\int P(x)dx} f(x)\, dx.$$

The foregoing solution has the same form as that given in Theorem 4.1.6, namely, $y = y_c + y_p$. In this case $y_c = c_1 e^{-\int P(x)dx}$ is a solution of the associated homogeneous equation

$$\frac{dy}{dx} + P(x)y = 0 \tag{2}$$

and

$$y_p = e^{-\int P(x)dx} \int e^{\int P(x)dx} f(x)\, dx \tag{3}$$

is a particular solution of the nonhomogeneous equation (1). As a means of motivating a method for solving nonhomogeneous linear equations of higher-order we propose to rederive the particular solution (3) by a method known as **variation of parameters.**

The basic procedure is that used in Section 4.2. ▶

Suppose that y_1 is a known solution of the homogeneous equation (2), that is,

$$\frac{dy_1}{dx} + P(x)y_1 = 0. \tag{4}$$

It is easily shown that $y_1 = e^{-\int P(x)dx}$ is a solution of (4) and because the equation is linear, $c_1 y_1(x)$ is its general solution. Variation of parameters consists of finding a particular solution of (1) of the form $y_p = u_1(x)y_1(x)$. In other words, we have replaced the *parameter* c_1 by a *function* u_1.

Substituting $y_p = u_1 y_1$ into (1) and using the Product Rule gives

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left[u_1 y_1\right] + P(x)u_1 y_1 = f(x)$$

$$u_1 \frac{dy_1}{dx} + y_1 \frac{du_1}{dx} + P(x)u_1 y_1 = f(x)$$

$$u_1 \overbrace{\left[\frac{dy_1}{dx} + P(x)y_1\right]}^{\text{0 because of (4)}} + y_1 \frac{du_1}{dx} = f(x)$$

so

$$y_1 \frac{du_1}{dx} = f(x).$$

By separating variables and integrating, we find u_1:

$$du_1 = \frac{f(x)}{y_1(x)}dx \quad \text{yields} \quad u_1 = \int \frac{f(x)}{y_1(x)}dx.$$

Hence the sought-after particular solution is

$$y_p = u_1 y_1 = y_1 \int \frac{f(x)}{y_1(x)}dx.$$

From the fact that $y_1 = e^{-\int P(x)dx}$ we see the last result is identical to (3).

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Linear Second-Order DEs Next we consider the case of a linear second-order equation

$$a_2(x)y'' + a_1(x)y' + a_0(x)y = g(x), \tag{5}$$

although, as we shall see, variation of parameters extends to higher-order equations. The method again begins by putting (5) into the standard form

$$y'' + P(x)y' + Q(x)y = f(x) \tag{6}$$

by dividing by the leading coefficient $a_2(x)$. In (6) we suppose that coefficient functions $P(x)$, $Q(x)$, and $f(x)$ are continuous on some common interval I. As we have already seen in Section 4.3, there is no difficulty in obtaining the complementary solution $y_c = c_1y_1(x) + c_2y_2(x)$, the general solution of the associated homogeneous equation of (6), when the coefficients are constants. Analogous to the preceding discussion, we now ask: Can the parameters c_1 and c_2 in y_c can be replaced with functions u_1 and u_2, or "variable parameters," so that

$$y = u_1(x)y_1(x) + u_2(x)y_2(x) \tag{7}$$

is a particular solution of (6)? To answer this question we substitute (7) into (6). Using the Product Rule to differentiate y_p twice, we get

$$y_p' = u_1y_1' + y_1u_1' + u_2y_2' + y_2u_2'$$

$$y_p'' = u_1y_1'' + y_1'u_1' + y_1u_1'' + u_1'y_1' + u_2y_2'' + y_2'u_2' + y_2u_2'' + u_2'y_2'.$$

Substituting (7) and the foregoing derivatives into (6) and grouping terms yields

$$\begin{aligned} y_p'' + P(x)y_p' + Q(x)y_p &= u_1\overbrace{[y_1'' + Py_1' + Qy_1]}^{\text{zero}} + u_2\overbrace{[y_2'' + Py_2' + Qy_2]}^{\text{zero}} + y_1u_1'' + u_1'y_1' \\ &\quad + y_2u_2'' + u_2'y_2' + P[y_1u_1' + y_2u_2'] + y_1'u_1' + y_2'u_2' \\ &= \frac{d}{dx}[y_1u_1'] + \frac{d}{dx}[y_2u_2'] + P[y_1u_1' + y_2u_2'] + y_1'u_1' + y_2'u_2' \\ &= \frac{d}{dx}[y_1u_1' + y_2u_2'] + P[y_1u_1' + y_2u_2'] + y_1'u_1' + y_2'u_2' = f(x). \end{aligned} \tag{8}$$

Because we seek to determine two unknown functions u_1 and u_2, reason dictates that we need two equations. We can obtain these equations by making the further assumption that the functions u_1 and u_2 satisfy $y_1u_1' + y_2u_2' = 0$. This assumption does not come out of the blue but is prompted by the first two terms in (8), since if we demand that $y_1u_1' + y_2u_2' = 0$, then (8) reduces to $y_1'u_1' + y_2'u_2' = f(x)$. We now have our desired two equations, albeit two equations for determining the derivatives u_1' and u_2'. By Cramer's Rule, the solution of the system

$$\begin{aligned} y_1u_1' + y_2u_2' &= 0 \\ y_1'u_1' + y_2'u_2' &= f(x) \end{aligned}$$

can be expressed in terms of determinants:

$$u_1' = \frac{W_1}{W} = -\frac{y_2f(x)}{W} \quad \text{and} \quad u_2' = \frac{W_2}{W} = \frac{y_1f(x)}{W}, \tag{9}$$

where $$W = \begin{vmatrix} y_1 & y_2 \\ y_1' & y_2' \end{vmatrix}, \quad W_1 = \begin{vmatrix} 0 & y_2 \\ f(x) & y_2' \end{vmatrix}, \quad W_2 = \begin{vmatrix} y_1 & 0 \\ y_1' & f(x) \end{vmatrix}. \tag{10}$$

The functions u_1 and u_2 are found by integrating the results in (9). The determinant W is recognized as the Wronskian of y_1 and y_2. By linear independence of y_1 and y_2 on I, we know that $W(y_1(x), y_2(x)) \neq 0$ for every x in the interval.

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Summary of the Method Usually, it is not a good idea to memorize formulas in lieu of understanding a procedure. However, the foregoing procedure is too long and complicated to use each time we wish to solve a differential equation. In this case it is more efficient to simply use the formulas in (9). Thus to solve $a_2y'' + a_1y' + a_0y = g(x)$, first find the complementary function $y_c = c_1y_1 + c_2y_2$ and then compute the Wronskian $W(y_1(x), y_2(x))$. By dividing by a_2, we put the equation into the standard form $y'' + Py' + Qy = f(x)$ to determine $f(x)$. We find u_1 and u_2 by integrating $u_1' = W_1/W$ and $u_2' = W_2/W$, where W_1 and W_2 are defined as in (10). A particular solution is $y_p = u_1y_1 + u_2y_2$. The general solution of the equation is then $y = y_c + y_p$.

EXAMPLE 1 General Solution Using Variation of Parameters

Solve $y'' - 4y' + 4y = (x + 1)e^{2x}$.

SOLUTION From the auxiliary equation $m^2 - 4m + 4 = (m - 2)^2 = 0$ we have $y_c = c_1e^{2x} + c_2xe^{2x}$. With the identifications $y_1 = e^{2x}$ and $y_2 = xe^{2x}$, we next compute the Wronskian:

$$W(e^{2x}, xe^{2x}) = \begin{vmatrix} e^{2x} & xe^{2x} \\ 2e^{2x} & 2xe^{2x} + e^{2x} \end{vmatrix} = e^{4x}.$$

Since the given differential equation is already in form (6) (that is, the coefficient of y'' is 1), we identify $f(x) = (x + 1)e^{2x}$. From (10) we obtain

$$W_1 = \begin{vmatrix} 0 & xe^{2x} \\ (x + 1)e^{2x} & 2xe^{2x} + e^{2x} \end{vmatrix} = -(x + 1)xe^{4x}, \qquad W_2 = \begin{vmatrix} e^{2x} & 0 \\ 2e^{2x} & (x + 1)e^{2x} \end{vmatrix} = (x + 1)e^{4x},$$

and so from (9)

$$u_1' = -\frac{(x + 1)xe^{4x}}{e^{4x}} = -x^2 - x, \qquad u_2' = \frac{(x + 1)e^{4x}}{e^{4x}} = x + 1.$$

It follows that $u_1 = -\frac{1}{3}x^3 - \frac{1}{2}x^2$ and $u_2 = \frac{1}{2}x^2 + x$. Hence

$$y_p = \left(-\frac{1}{3}x^3 - \frac{1}{2}x^2\right)e^{2x} + \left(\frac{1}{2}x^2 + x\right)xe^{2x} = \frac{1}{6}x^3e^{2x} + \frac{1}{2}x^2e^{2x}$$

and

$$y = y_c + y_p = c_1e^{2x} + c_2xe^{2x} + \frac{1}{6}x^3e^{2x} + \frac{1}{2}x^2e^{2x}.$$

EXAMPLE 2 General Solution Using Variation of Parameters

Solve $4y'' + 36y = \csc 3x$.

SOLUTION We first put the equation in the standard form (6) by dividing by 4:

$$y'' + 9y = \frac{1}{4}\csc 3x.$$

Because the roots of the auxiliary equation $m^2 + 9 = 0$ are $m_1 = 3i$ and $m_2 = -3i$, the complementary function is $y_c = c_1 \cos 3x + c_2 \sin 3x$. Using $y_1 = \cos 3x$, $y_2 = \sin 3x$, and $f(x) = \frac{1}{4}\csc 3x$, we obtain

$$W(\cos 3x, \sin 3x) = \begin{vmatrix} \cos 3x & \sin 3x \\ -3 \sin 3x & 3 \cos 3x \end{vmatrix} = 3,$$

$$W_1 = \begin{vmatrix} 0 & \sin 3x \\ \frac{1}{4}\csc 3x & 3 \cos 3x \end{vmatrix} = -\frac{1}{4}, \qquad W_2 = \begin{vmatrix} \cos 3x & 0 \\ -3 \sin 3x & \frac{1}{4}\csc 3x \end{vmatrix} = \frac{1}{4}\frac{\cos 3x}{\sin 3x}.$$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Integrating $u_1' = \dfrac{W_1}{W} = -\dfrac{1}{12}$ and $u_2' = \dfrac{W_2}{W} = \dfrac{1}{12}\dfrac{\cos 3x}{\sin 3x}$

gives $u_1 = -\frac{1}{12}x$ and $u_2 = \frac{1}{36}\ln|\sin 3x|$. Thus a particular solution is

$$y_p = -\frac{1}{12}x\cos 3x + \frac{1}{36}(\sin 3x)\ln|\sin 3x|.$$

The general solution of the equation is

$$y = y_c + y_p = c_1\cos 3x + c_2\sin 3x - \frac{1}{12}x\cos 3x + \frac{1}{36}(\sin 3x)\ln|\sin 3x|. \quad (11)$$

Equation (11) represents the general solution of the differential equation on, say, the interval $(0, \pi/6)$.

Constants of Integration When computing the indefinite integrals of u_1' and u_2', we need not introduce any constants. This is because

$$\begin{aligned} y = y_c + y_p &= c_1y_1 + c_2y_2 + (u_1 + a_1)y_1 + (u_2 + b_1)y_2 \\ &= (c_1 + a_1)y_1 + (c_2 + b_1)y_2 + u_1y_1 + u_2y_2 \\ &= C_1y_1 + C_2y_2 + u_1y_1 + u_2y_2. \end{aligned}$$

EXAMPLE 3 General Solution Using Variation of Parameters

Solve $y'' - y = \dfrac{1}{x}$.

SOLUTION The auxiliary equation $m^2 - 1 = 0$ yields $m_1 = -1$ and $m_2 = 1$. Therefore $y_c = c_1e^x + c_2e^{-x}$. Now $W(e^x, e^{-x}) = -2$, and

$$u_1' = -\frac{e^{-x}(1/x)}{-2}, \qquad u_1 = \frac{1}{2}\int_{x_0}^{x}\frac{e^{-t}}{t}\,dt,$$

$$u_2' = \frac{e^{x}(1/x)}{-2}, \qquad u_2 = -\frac{1}{2}\int_{x_0}^{x}\frac{e^{t}}{t}\,dt.$$

Since the foregoing integrals are nonelementary, we are forced to write

$$y_p = \frac{1}{2}e^x\int_{x_0}^{x}\frac{e^{-t}}{t}\,dt - \frac{1}{2}e^{-x}\int_{x_0}^{x}\frac{e^{t}}{t}\,dt,$$

and so $$y = y_c + y_p = c_1e^x + c_2e^{-x} + \frac{1}{2}e^x\int_{x_0}^{x}\frac{e^{-t}}{t}\,dt - \frac{1}{2}e^{-x}\int_{x_0}^{x}\frac{e^{t}}{t}\,dt. \quad (12)$$

In Example 3 we can integrate on any interval $[x_0, x]$ that does not contain the origin. We will solve the equation in Example 3 by an alternative method in Section 4.8.

Higher-Order Equations The method that we have just examined for nonhomogeneous second-order differential equations can be generalized to linear nth-order equations that have been put into the standard form

$$y^{(n)} + P_{n-1}(x)y^{(n-1)} + \cdots + P_1(x)y' + P_0(x)y = f(x). \quad (13)$$

If $y_c = c_1y_1 + c_2y_2 + \cdots + c_ny_n$ is the complementary function for (13), then a particular solution is

$$y_p = u_1(x)y_1(x) + u_2(x)y_2(x) + \cdots + u_n(x)y_n(x),$$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

where the u_k', $k = 1, 2, \ldots, n$ are determined by the n equations

$$\begin{aligned} y_1u_1' + \quad & y_2u_2' + \cdots + \quad y_nu_n' = 0 \\ y_1'u_1' + \quad & y_2'u_2' + \cdots + \quad y_n'u_n' = 0 \\ & \vdots \qquad\qquad\qquad \vdots \\ y_1^{(n-1)}u_1' + \; & y_2^{(n-1)}u_2' + \cdots + y_n^{(n-1)}u_n' = f(x). \end{aligned} \tag{14}$$

The first $n - 1$ equations in this system, like $y_1u_1' + y_2u_2' = 0$ in (8), are assumptions that are made to simplify the resulting equation after $y_p = u_1(x)y_1(x) + \cdots + u_n(x)y_n(x)$ is substituted in (13). In this case Cramer's Rule gives

$$u_k' = \frac{W_k}{W}, \quad k = 1, 2, \ldots, n,$$

where W is the Wronskian of $y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_n$ and W_k is the determinant obtained by replacing the kth column of the Wronskian by the column consisting of the right-hand side of (14)—that is, the column consisting of $(0, 0, \ldots, f(x))$. When $n = 2$, we get (9). When $n = 3$, the particular solution is $y_p = u_1y_1 + u_2y_2 + u_3y_3$, where y_1, y_2, and y_3 constitute a linearly independent set of solutions of the associated homogeneous DE and u_1, u_2, u_3 are determined from

$$u_1' = \frac{W_1}{W}, \qquad u_2' = \frac{W_2}{W}, \qquad u_3' = \frac{W_3}{W}, \tag{15}$$

$$W_1 = \begin{vmatrix} 0 & y_2 & y_3 \\ 0 & y_2' & y_3' \\ f(x) & y_2'' & y_3'' \end{vmatrix}, \quad W_2 = \begin{vmatrix} y_1 & 0 & y_3 \\ y_1' & 0 & y_3' \\ y_1'' & f(x) & y_3'' \end{vmatrix}, \quad W_3 = \begin{vmatrix} y_1 & y_2 & 0 \\ y_1' & y_2' & 0 \\ y_1'' & y_2'' & f(x) \end{vmatrix}, \quad \text{and} \quad W = \begin{vmatrix} y_1 & y_2 & y_3 \\ y_1' & y_2' & y_3' \\ y_1'' & y_2'' & y_3'' \end{vmatrix}.$$

See Problems 25–28 in Exercises 4.6.

REMARKS

(*i*) Variation of parameters has a distinct advantage over the method of undetermined coefficients in that it will *always* yield a particular solution y_p provided that the associated homogeneous equation can be solved. The present method is not limited to a function $f(x)$ that is a combination of the four types listed on page 140. As we shall see in the next section, variation of parameters, unlike undetermined coefficients, is applicable to linear DEs with variable coefficients.

(*ii*) In the problems that follow, do not hesitate to simplify the form of y_p. Depending on how the antiderivatives of u_1' and u_2' are found, you might not obtain the same y_p as given in the answer section. For example, in Problem 3 in Exercises 4.6 both $y_p = \frac{1}{2}\sin x - \frac{1}{2}x\cos x$ and $y_p = \frac{1}{4}\sin x - \frac{1}{2}x\cos x$ are valid answers. In either case the general solution $y = y_c + y_p$ simplifies to $y = c_1\cos x + c_2\sin x - \frac{1}{2}x\cos x$. Why?

EXERCISES 4.6

Answers to selected odd-numbered problems begin on page ANS-6.

In Problems 1–18 solve each differential equation by variation of parameters.

1. $y'' + y = \sec x$

2. $y'' + y = \tan x$

3. $y'' + y = \sin x$

4. $y'' + y = \sec\theta\tan\theta$

5. $y'' + y = \cos^2 x$

6. $y'' + y = \sec^2 x$

7. $y'' - y = \cosh x$

8. $y'' - y = \sinh 2x$

9. $y'' - 4y = \dfrac{e^{2x}}{x}$

10. $y'' - 9y = \dfrac{9x}{e^{3x}}$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

11. $y'' + 3y' + 2y = \dfrac{1}{1 + e^x}$

12. $y'' - 2y' + y = \dfrac{e^x}{1 + x^2}$

13. $y'' + 3y' + 2y = \sin e^x$

14. $y'' - 2y' + y = e^t \arctan t$

15. $y'' + 2y' + y = e^{-t} \ln t$

16. $2y'' + 2y' + y = 4\sqrt{x}$

17. $3y'' - 6y' + 6y = e^x \sec x$

18. $4y'' - 4y' + y = e^{x/2}\sqrt{1 - x^2}$

In Problems 19–22 solve each differential equation by variation of parameters, subject to the initial conditions $y(0) = 1, y'(0) = 0$.

19. $4y'' - y = xe^{x/2}$

20. $2y'' + y' - y = x + 1$

21. $y'' + 2y' - 8y = 2e^{-2x} - e^{-x}$

22. $y'' - 4y' + 4y = (12x^2 - 6x)e^{2x}$

In Problems 23 and 24 the indicated functions are known linearly independent solutions of the associated homogeneous differential equation on $(0, \quad)$. Find the general solution of the given nonhomogeneous equation.

23. $x^2y'' + xy' + \left(x^2 - \frac{1}{4}\right)y = x^{3/2}$;
$y_1 = x^{-1/2}\cos x, y_2 = x^{-1/2}\sin x$

24. $x^2y'' + xy' + y = \sec(\ln x)$;
$y_1 = \cos(\ln x), y_2 = \sin(\ln x)$

In Problems 25–28 solve the given third-order differential equation by variation of parameters.

25. $y''' + y' = \tan x$

26. $y''' + 4y' = \sec 2x$

27. $y''' - 2y'' - y' + 2y = e^{4x}$

28. $y''' - 3y'' + 2y' = \dfrac{e^{2x}}{1 + e^x}$

Discussion Problems

In Problems 29 and 30 discuss how the methods of undetermined coefficients and variation of parameters can be combined to solve the given differential equation. Carry out your ideas.

29. $3y'' - 6y' + 30y = 15 \sin x + e^x \tan 3x$

30. $y'' - 2y' + y = 4x^2 - 3 + x^{-1}e^x$

31. What are the intervals of definition of the general solutions in Problems 1, 7, 9, and 18? Discuss why the interval of definition of the general solution in Problem 24 is *not* $(0, \quad)$.

32. Find the general solution of $x^4y'' + x^3y' - 4x^2y = 1$ given that $y_1 = x^2$ is a solution of the associated homogeneous equation.

4.7 CAUCHY-EULER EQUATION

REVIEW MATERIAL

- Review the concept of the auxiliary equation in Section 4.3.

INTRODUCTION The same relative ease with which we were able to find explicit solutions of higher-order linear differential equations with constant coefficients in the preceding sections does not, in general, carry over to linear equations with variable coefficients. We shall see in Chapter 6 that when a linear DE has variable coefficients, the best that we can *usually* expect is to find a solution in the form of an infinite series. However, the type of differential equation that we consider in this section is an exception to this rule; it is a linear equation with variable coefficients whose general solution can always be expressed in terms of powers of x, sines, cosines, and logarithmic functions. Moreover, its method of solution is quite similar to that for constant-coefficient equations in that an auxiliary equation must be solved.

Cauchy-Euler Equation A linear differential equation of the form

$$a_n x^n \frac{d^n y}{dx^n} + a_{n-1}x^{n-1}\frac{d^{n-1}y}{dx^{n-1}} + \cdots + a_1 x\frac{dy}{dx} + a_0 y = g(x),$$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

where the coefficients $a_n, a_{n-1}, \ldots, a_0$ are constants, is known as a **Cauchy-Euler equation.** The differential equation is named in honor of two of the most prolific mathematicians of all time. **Augustin-Louis Cauchy** (French, 1789–1857) and **Leonhard Euler** (Swiss, 1707–1783). The observable characteristic of this type of equation is that the degree $k = n, n-1, \ldots, 1, 0$ of the monomial coefficients x^k matches the order k of differentiation $d^k y/dx^k$:

$$a_n x^n \frac{d^n y}{dx^n} + a_{n-1} x^{n-1} \frac{d^{n-1} y}{dx^{n-1}} + \cdots.$$

(same) (same)

As in Section 4.3, we start the discussion with a detailed examination of the forms of the general solutions of the homogeneous second-order equation

$$ax^2 \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + bx \frac{dy}{dx} + cy = 0. \tag{1}$$

The solution of higher-order equations follows analogously. Also, we can solve the nonhomogeneous equation $ax^2y'' + bxy' + cy = g(x)$ by variation of parameters, once we have determined the complementary function y_c.

Note The coefficient ax^2 of y'' is zero at $x = 0$. Hence to guarantee that the fundamental results of Theorem 4.1.1 are applicable to the Cauchy-Euler equation, we focus our attention on finding the general solutions defined on the interval $(0, \quad)$.

Method of Solution We try a solution of the form $y = x^m$, where m is to be determined. Analogous to what happened when we substituted e^{mx} into a linear equation with constant coefficients, when we substitute x^m, each term of a Cauchy-Euler equation becomes a polynomial in m times x^m, since

$$a_k x^k \frac{d^k y}{dx^k} = a_k x^k m(m-1)(m-2)\cdots(m-k+1)x^{m-k} = a_k m(m-1)(m-2)\cdots(m-k+1)x^m.$$

For example, when we substitute $y = x^m$, the second-order equation becomes

$$ax^2 \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + bx \frac{dy}{dx} + cy = am(m-1)x^m + bmx^m + cx^m = (am(m-1) + bm + c)x^m.$$

Thus $y = x^m$ is a solution of the differential equation whenever m is a solution of the **auxiliary equation**

$$am(m-1) + bm + c = 0 \quad \text{or} \quad am^2 + (b-a)m + c = 0. \tag{2}$$

There are three different cases to be considered, depending on whether the roots of this quadratic equation are real and distinct, real and equal, or complex. In the last case the roots appear as a conjugate pair.

Case I: Distinct Real Roots Let m_1 and m_2 denote the real roots of (1) such that $m_1 \neq m_2$. Then $y_1 = x^{m_1}$ and $y_2 = x^{m_2}$ form a fundamental set of solutions. Hence the general solution is

$$y = c_1 x^{m_1} + c_2 x^{m_2}. \tag{3}$$

EXAMPLE 1 Distinct Roots

Solve $x^2 \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} - 2x \frac{dy}{dx} - 4y = 0.$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

SOLUTION Rather than just memorizing equation (2), it is preferable to assume $y = x^m$ as the solution a few times to understand the origin and the difference between this new form of the auxiliary equation and that obtained in Section 4.3. Differentiate twice,

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = mx^{m-1}, \qquad \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = m(m-1)x^{m-2},$$

and substitute back into the differential equation:

$$x^2\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} - 2x\frac{dy}{dx} - 4y = x^2 \cdot m(m-1)x^{m-2} - 2x \cdot mx^{m-1} - 4x^m$$
$$= x^m(m(m-1) - 2m - 4) = x^m(m^2 - 3m - 4) = 0$$

if $m^2 - 3m - 4 = 0$. Now $(m+1)(m-4) = 0$ implies $m_1 = -1$, $m_2 = 4$, so $y = c_1x^{-1} + c_2x^4$.

Case II: Repeated Real Roots If the roots of (2) are repeated (that is, $m_1 = m_2$), then we obtain only one solution—namely, $y = x^{m_1}$. When the roots of the quadratic equation $am^2 + (b-a)m + c = 0$ are equal, the discriminant of the coefficients is necessarily zero. It follows from the quadratic formula that the root must be $m_1 = -(b-a)/2a$.

Now we can construct a second solution y_2, using (5) of Section 4.2. We first write the Cauchy-Euler equation in the standard form

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + \frac{b}{ax}\frac{dy}{dx} + \frac{c}{ax^2}y = 0$$

and make the identifications $P(x) = b/ax$ and $\int (b/ax)\,dx = (b/a)\ln x$. Thus

$$y_2 = x^{m_1}\int \frac{e^{-(b/a)\ln x}}{x^{2m_1}}\,dx$$
$$= x^{m_1}\int x^{-b/a} \cdot x^{-2m_1}\,dx \qquad \leftarrow e^{-(b/a)\ln x} = e^{\ln x^{-b/a}} = x^{-b/a}$$
$$= x^{m_1}\int x^{-b/a} \cdot x^{(b-a)/a}\,dx \qquad \leftarrow -2m_1 = (b-a)/a$$
$$= x^{m_1}\int \frac{dx}{x} = x^{m_1}\ln x.$$

The general solution is then

$$y = c_1x^{m_1} + c_2x^{m_1}\ln x. \tag{4}$$

EXAMPLE 2 Repeated Roots

Solve $4x^2\dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2} + 8x\dfrac{dy}{dx} + y = 0$.

SOLUTION The substitution $y = x^m$ yields

$$4x^2\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + 8x\frac{dy}{dx} + y = x^m(4m(m-1) + 8m + 1) = x^m(4m^2 + 4m + 1) = 0$$

when $4m^2 + 4m + 1 = 0$ or $(2m+1)^2 = 0$. Since $m_1 = -\frac{1}{2}$, it follows from (4) that the general solution is $y = c_1x^{-1/2} + c_2x^{-1/2}\ln x$.

For higher-order equations, if m_1 is a root of multiplicity k, then it can be shown that

$$x^{m_1}, \quad x^{m_1}\ln x, \quad x^{m_1}(\ln x)^2, \ldots, \quad x^{m_1}(\ln x)^{k-1}$$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

are k linearly independent solutions. Correspondingly, the general solution of the differential equation must then contain a linear combination of these k solutions.

Case III: Conjugate Complex Roots If the roots of (2) are the conjugate pair $m_1 = \alpha + i\beta$, $m_2 = \alpha - i\beta$, where α and $\beta > 0$ are real, then a solution is

$$y = C_1 x^{\alpha+i\beta} + C_2 x^{\alpha-i\beta}.$$

But when the roots of the auxiliary equation are complex, as in the case of equations with constant coefficients, we wish to write the solution in terms of real functions only. We note the identity

$$x^{i\beta} = (e^{\ln x})^{i\beta} = e^{i\beta \ln x},$$

which, by Euler's formula, is the same as

$$x^{i\beta} = \cos(\beta \ln x) + i \sin(\beta \ln x).$$

Similarly, $$x^{-i\beta} = \cos(\beta \ln x) - i \sin(\beta \ln x).$$

Adding and subtracting the last two results yields

$$x^{i\beta} + x^{-i\beta} = 2\cos(\beta \ln x) \quad \text{and} \quad x^{i\beta} - x^{-i\beta} = 2i \sin(\beta \ln x),$$

respectively. From the fact that $y = C_1 x^{\alpha+i\beta} + C_2 x^{\alpha-i\beta}$ is a solution for any values of the constants, we see, in turn, for $C_1 = C_2 = 1$ and $C_1 = 1$, $C_2 = -1$ that

$$y_1 = x^\alpha (x^{i\beta} + x^{-i\beta}) \quad \text{and} \quad y_2 = x^\alpha (x^{i\beta} - x^{-i\beta})$$

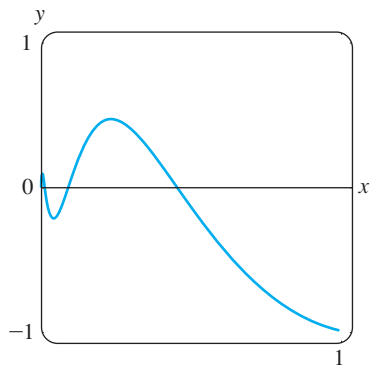
or $$y_1 = 2x^\alpha \cos(\beta \ln x) \quad \text{and} \quad y_2 = 2ix^\alpha \sin(\beta \ln x)$$

are also solutions. Since $W(x^\alpha \cos(\beta \ln x), x^\alpha \sin(\beta \ln x)) = \beta x^{2\alpha-1} \neq 0$, $\beta > 0$ on the interval $(0, \quad)$, we conclude that

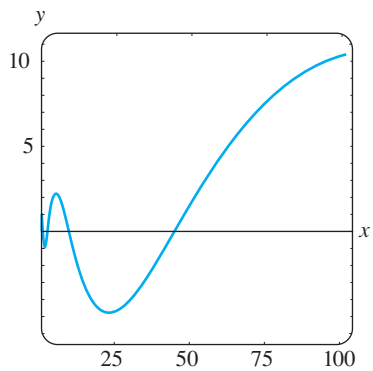
$$y_1 = x^\alpha \cos(\beta \ln x) \quad \text{and} \quad y_2 = x^\alpha \sin(\beta \ln x)$$

constitute a fundamental set of real solutions of the differential equation. Hence the general solution is

$$y = x^\alpha [c_1 \cos(\beta \ln x) + c_2 \sin(\beta \ln x)]. \tag{5}$$



(a) solution for $0 < x \leq 1$



(b) solution for $0 < x \leq 100$

FIGURE 4.7.1 Solution curve of IVP in Example 3

EXAMPLE 3 An Initial-Value Problem

Solve $4x^2y'' + 17y = 0$, $y(1) = -1$, $y'(1) = -\frac{1}{2}$.

SOLUTION The y' term is missing in the given Cauchy-Euler equation; nevertheless, the substitution $y = x^m$ yields

$$4x^2y'' + 17y = x^m(4m(m-1) + 17) = x^m(4m^2 - 4m + 17) = 0$$

when $4m^2 - 4m + 17 = 0$. From the quadratic formula we find that the roots are $m_1 = \frac{1}{2} + 2i$ and $m_2 = \frac{1}{2} - 2i$. With the identifications $\alpha = \frac{1}{2}$ and $\beta = 2$ we see from (5) that the general solution of the differential equation is

$$y = x^{1/2}[c_1 \cos(2 \ln x) + c_2 \sin(2 \ln x)].$$

By applying the initial conditions $y(1) = -1$, $y'(1) = -\frac{1}{2}$ to the foregoing solution and using $\ln 1 = 0$, we then find, in turn, that $c_1 = -1$ and $c_2 = 0$. Hence the solution of the initial-value problem is $y = -x^{1/2} \cos(2 \ln x)$. The graph of this function, obtained with the aid of computer software, is given in Figure 4.7.1. The particular solution is seen to be oscillatory and unbounded as $x \to \quad$.

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

The next example illustrates the solution of a third-order Cauchy-Euler equation.

EXAMPLE 4 Third-Order Equation

Solve $x^3\frac{d^3y}{dx^3} + 5x^2\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + 7x\frac{dy}{dx} + 8y = 0.$

SOLUTION The first three derivatives of $y = x^m$ are

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = mx^{m-1}, \qquad \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = m(m-1)x^{m-2}, \qquad \frac{d^3y}{dx^3} = m(m-1)(m-2)x^{m-3},$$

so the given differential equation becomes

$$\begin{aligned} x^3\frac{d^3y}{dx^3} + 5x^2\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + 7x\frac{dy}{dx} + 8y &= x^3m(m-1)(m-2)x^{m-3} + 5x^2m(m-1)x^{m-2} + 7xmx^{m-1} + 8x^m \\ &= x^m(m(m-1)(m-2) + 5m(m-1) + 7m + 8) \\ &= x^m(m^3 + 2m^2 + 4m + 8) = x^m(m+2)(m^2+4) = 0. \end{aligned}$$

In this case we see that $y = x^m$ will be a solution of the differential equation for $m_1 = -2$, $m_2 = 2i$, and $m_3 = -2i$. Hence the general solution is $y = c_1x^{-2} + c_2\cos(2\ln x) + c_3\sin(2\ln x)$. ☰

Nonhomogeneous Equations The method of undetermined coefficients described in Sections 4.5 and 4.6 does not carry over, *in general,* to nonhomogeneous linear differential equations with variable coefficients. Consequently, in our next example the method of variation of parameters is employed.

EXAMPLE 5 Variation of Parameters

Solve $x^2y'' - 3xy' + 3y = 2x^4e^x.$

SOLUTION Since the equation is nonhomogeneous, we first solve the associated homogeneous equation. From the auxiliary equation $(m-1)(m-3) = 0$ we find $y_c = c_1x + c_2x^3$. Now before using variation of parameters to find a particular solution $y_p = u_1y_1 + u_2y_2$, recall that the formulas $u_1' = W_1/W$ and $u_2' = W_2/W$, where W_1, W_2, and W are the determinants defined on page 158, were derived under the assumption that the differential equation has been put into the standard form $y'' + P(x)y' + Q(x)y = f(x)$. Therefore we divide the given equation by x^2, and from

$$y'' - \frac{3}{x}y' + \frac{3}{x^2}y = 2x^2e^x$$

we make the identification $f(x) = 2x^2e^x$. Now with $y_1 = x$, $y_2 = x^3$, and

$$W = \begin{vmatrix} x & x^3 \\ 1 & 3x^2 \end{vmatrix} = 2x^3, \quad W_1 = \begin{vmatrix} 0 & x^3 \\ 2x^2e^x & 3x^2 \end{vmatrix} = -2x^5e^x, \quad W_2 = \begin{vmatrix} x & 0 \\ 1 & 2x^2e^x \end{vmatrix} = 2x^3e^x,$$

we find $$u_1' = -\frac{2x^5e^x}{2x^3} = -x^2e^x \qquad \text{and} \qquad u_2' = \frac{2x^3e^x}{2x^3} = e^x.$$

The integral of the last function is immediate, but in the case of u_1' we integrate by parts twice. The results are $u_1 = -x^2e^x + 2xe^x - 2e^x$ and $u_2 = e^x$. Hence $y_p = u_1y_1 + u_2y_2$ is

$$y_p = (-x^2e^x + 2xe^x - 2e^x)x + e^xx^3 = 2x^2e^x - 2xe^x.$$

Finally, $y = y_c + y_p = c_1x + c_2x^3 + 2x^2e^x - 2xe^x$. ☰

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Reduction to Constant Coefficient The similarities between the forms of solutions of Cauchy-Euler equations and solutions of linear equations with constant coefficients are not just a coincidence. For example, when the roots of the auxiliary equations for $ay'' + by' + cy = 0$ and $ax^2y'' + bxy' + cy = 0$ are distinct and real, the respective general solutions are

$$y = c_1e^{m_1x} + c_2e^{m_2x} \quad \text{and} \quad y = c_1x^{m_1} + c_2x^{m_2}, \quad x > 0. \tag{5}$$

In view of the identity $e^{\ln x} = x$, $x > 0$, the second solution given in (5) can be expressed in the same form as the first solution:

$$y = c_1e^{m_1 \ln x} + c_2e^{m_2 \ln x} = c_1e^{m_1t} + c_2e^{m_2t},$$

where $t = \ln x$. This last result illustrates the fact that any Cauchy-Euler equation can *always* be rewritten as a linear differential equation with constant coefficients by means of the substitution $x = e^t$. The idea is to solve the new differential equation in terms of the variable t, using the methods of the previous sections, and, once the general solution is obtained, resubstitute $t = \ln x$. This method, illustrated in the last example, requires the use of the Chain Rule of differentiation.

EXAMPLE 6 Changing to Constant Coefficient

Solve $x^2y'' - xy' + y = \ln x$.

SOLUTION With the substitution $x = e^t$ or $t = \ln x$, it follows that

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy}{dt}\frac{dt}{dx} = \frac{1}{x}\frac{dy}{dt} \qquad \leftarrow \text{Chain Rule}$$

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = \frac{1}{x}\frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{dy}{dt}\right) + \frac{dy}{dt}\left(-\frac{1}{x^2}\right) \qquad \leftarrow \text{Product Rule and Chain Rule}$$

$$= \frac{1}{x}\left(\frac{d^2y}{dt^2}\frac{1}{x}\right) + \frac{dy}{dt}\left(-\frac{1}{x^2}\right) = \frac{1}{x^2}\left(\frac{d^2y}{dt^2} - \frac{dy}{dt}\right).$$

Substituting in the given differential equation and simplifying yields

$$\frac{d^2y}{dt^2} - 2\frac{dy}{dt} + y = t.$$

Since this last equation has constant coefficients, its auxiliary equation is $m^2 - 2m + 1 = 0$, or $(m - 1)^2 = 0$. Thus we obtain $y_c = c_1e^t + c_2te^t$.

By undetermined coefficients we try a particular solution of the form $y_p = A + Bt$. This assumption leads to $-2B + A + Bt = t$, so $A = 2$ and $B = 1$. Using $y = y_c + y_p$, we get

$$y = c_1e^t + c_2te^t + 2 + t.$$

By resubstituting $e^t = x$ and $t = \ln x$ we see that the general solution of the original differential equation on the interval $(0, \quad)$ is $y = c_1x + c_2x \ln x + 2 + \ln x$.

Solutions For $x < 0$ In the preceding discussion we have solved Cauchy-Euler equations for $x > 0$. One way of solving a Cauchy-Euler equation for $x < 0$ is to change the independent variable by means of the substitution $t = -x$ (which implies $t > 0$) and using the Chain Rule:

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy}{dt}\frac{dt}{dx} = -\frac{dy}{dt} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = \frac{d}{dt}\left(-\frac{dy}{dt}\right)\frac{dt}{dx} = \frac{d^2y}{dt^2}.$$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

See Problems 37 and 38 in Exercises 4.7.

A Different Form A second-order equation of the form

$$a(x - x_0)^2 \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + b(x - x_0)\frac{dy}{dx} + cy = 0 \tag{6}$$

is also a Cauchy-Euler equation. Observe that (6) reduces to (1) when $x_0 = 0$.

We can solve (6) as we did (1), namely, seeking solutions of $y = (x - x_0)^m$ and using

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = m(x - x_0)^{m-1} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = m(m - 1)(x - x_0)^{m-2}.$$

Alternatively, we can reduce (6) to the familiar form (1) by means of the change of independent variable $t = x - x_0$, solving the reduced equation, and resubstituting. See Problems 39–42 in Exercises 4.7.

EXERCISES 4.7

Answers to selected odd-numbered problems begin on page ANS-6.

In Problems 1–18 solve the given differential equation.

1. $x^2y'' - 2y = 0$

2. $4x^2y'' + y = 0$

3. $xy'' + y' = 0$

4. $xy'' - 3y' = 0$

5. $x^2y'' + xy' + 4y = 0$

6. $x^2y'' + 5xy' + 3y = 0$

7. $x^2y'' - 3xy' - 2y = 0$

8. $x^2y'' + 3xy' - 4y = 0$

9. $25x^2y'' + 25xy' + y = 0$

10. $4x^2y'' + 4xy' - y = 0$

11. $x^2y'' + 5xy' + 4y = 0$

12. $x^2y'' + 8xy' + 6y = 0$

13. $3x^2y'' + 6xy' + y = 0$

14. $x^2y'' - 7xy' + 41y = 0$

15. $x^3y''' - 6y = 0$

16. $x^3y''' + xy' - y = 0$

17. $xy^{(4)} + 6y''' = 0$

18. $x^4y^{(4)} + 6x^3y''' + 9x^2y'' + 3xy' + y = 0$

In Problems 19–24 solve the given differential equation by variation of parameters.

19. $xy'' - 4y' = x^4$

20. $2x^2y'' + 5xy' + y = x^2 - x$

21. $x^2y'' - xy' + y = 2x$

22. $x^2y'' - 2xy' + 2y = x^4e^x$

23. $x^2y'' + xy' - y = \ln x$

24. $x^2y'' + xy' - y = \dfrac{1}{x + 1}$

In Problems 25–30 solve the given initial-value problem. Use a graphing utility to graph the solution curve.

25. $x^2y'' + 3xy' = 0, \quad y(1) = 0, y'(1) = 4$

26. $x^2y'' - 5xy' + 8y = 0, \quad y(2) = 32, y'(2) = 0$

27. $x^2y'' + xy' + y = 0, \quad y(1) = 1, y'(1) = 2$

28. $x^2y'' - 3xy' + 4y = 0, \quad y(1) = 5, y'(1) = 3$

29. $xy'' + y' = x, \quad y(1) = 1, y'(1) = -\frac{1}{2}$

30. $x^2y'' - 5xy' + 8y = 8x^6, \quad y\left(\frac{1}{2}\right) = 0, y'\left(\frac{1}{2}\right) = 0$

In Problems 31–36 use the substitution $x = e^t$ to transform the given Cauchy-Euler equation to a differential equation with constant coefficients. Solve the original equation by solving the new equation using the procedures in Sections 4.3–4.5.

31. $x^2y'' + 9xy' - 20y = 0$

32. $x^2y'' - 9xy' + 25y = 0$

33. $x^2y'' + 10xy' + 8y = x^2$

34. $x^2y'' - 4xy' + 6y = \ln x^2$

35. $x^2y'' - 3xy' + 13y = 4 + 3x$

36. $x^3y''' - 3x^2y'' + 6xy' - 6y = 3 + \ln x^3$

In Problems 37 and 38 use the substitution $t = -x$ to solve the given initial-value problem on the interval $(-\infty, 0)$.

37. $4x^2y'' + y = 0, \quad y(-1) = 2, y'(-1) = 4$

38. $x^2y'' - 4xy' + 6y = 0, \quad y(-2) = 8, y'(-2) = 0$

In Problems 39 and 40 use $y = (x - x_0)^m$ to solve the given differential equation.

39. $(x + 3)^2y'' - 8(x - 1)y' + 14y = 0$

40. $(x - 1)^2y'' - (x - 1)y' + 5y = 0$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

In Problems 41 and 42 use the substitution $t = x - x_0$ to solve the given differential equation.

41. $(x + 2)^2y'' + (x + 2)y' + y = 0$

42. $(x - 4)^2y'' - 5(x - 4)y' + 9y = 0$

Discussion Problems

43. Give the largest interval over which the general solution of Problem 42 is defined.

44. Can a Cauchy-Euler differential equation of lowest order with real coefficients be found if it is known that 2 and $1 - i$ are roots of its auxiliary equation? Carry out your ideas.

45. The initial-conditions $y(0) = y_0$, $y'(0) = y_1$ apply to each of the following differential equations:

$$x^2y'' = 0,$$
$$x^2y'' - 2xy' + 2y = 0,$$
$$x^2y'' - 4xy' + 6y = 0.$$

For what values of y_0 and y_1 does each initial-value problem have a solution?

46. What are the x-intercepts of the solution curve shown in Figure 4.7.1? How many x-intercepts are there for $0 < x < \frac{1}{2}$?

Computer Lab Assignments

In Problems 47–50 solve the given differential equation by using a CAS to find the (approximate) roots of the auxiliary equation.

47. $2x^3y''' - 10.98x^2y'' + 8.5xy' + 1.3y = 0$

48. $x^3y''' + 4x^2y'' + 5xy' - 9y = 0$

49. $x^4y^{(4)} + 6x^3y''' + 3x^2y'' - 3xy' + 4y = 0$

50. $x^4y^{(4)} - 6x^3y''' + 33x^2y'' - 105xy' + 169y = 0$

51. Solve $x^3y''' - x^2y'' - 2xy' + 6y = x^2$ by variation of parameters. Use a CAS as an aid in computing roots of the auxiliary equation and the determinants given in (15) of Section 4.6.

4.8 GREEN'S FUNCTIONS

REVIEW MATERIAL

- See the *Remarks* at the end of Section 4.1 for the definitions of *response*, *input*, and *output*.
- Differential operators in Section 4.1 and Section 4.5
- The method of variation of parameters in Section 4.6

INTRODUCTION We will see in Chapter 5 that the linear second-order differential equation

$$a_2(x)\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + a_1(x)\frac{dy}{dx} + a_0(x)y = g(x) \tag{1}$$

plays an important role in many applications. In the mathematical analysis of physical systems it is often desirable to express the **response** or **output** $y(x)$ of (1) subject to either initial conditions or boundary conditions directly in terms of the **forcing function** or **input** $g(x)$. In this manner the response of the system can quickly be analyzed for different forcing functions.

To see how this is done, we start by examining solutions of initial-value problems in which the DE (1) has been put into the standard form

$$y'' + P(x)y' + Q(x)y = f(x) \tag{2}$$

by dividing the equation by the lead coefficient $a_2(x)$. We also assume throughout this section that the coefficient functions $P(x)$, $Q(x)$, and $f(x)$ are continuous on some common interval I.

4.8.1 INITIAL-VALUE PROBLEMS

Three Initial-Value Problems We will see as the discussion unfolds that the solution $y(x)$ of the second order initial-value problem

$$y'' + P(x)y' + Q(x)y = f(x), \quad y(x_0) = y_0, \quad y'(x_0) = y_1 \tag{3}$$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

can be expressed as the superposition of two solutions:

$$y(x) = y_h(x) + y_p(x), \tag{4}$$

where $y_h(x)$ is the solution of the associated homogeneous DE with nonhomogeneous initial conditions

Here at least one of the numbers y_0 or y_1 is assumed to be nonzero. If both y_0 and y_1 are 0, then the solution of the IVP is $y = 0$.

$$y'' + P(x)y' + Q(x)y = 0, \quad y(x_0) = y_0, \; y'(x_0) = y_1 \tag{5}$$

and $y_p(x)$ is the solution of the nonhomogeneous DE with homogeneous (that is, zero) initial conditions

$$y'' + P(x)y' + Q(x)y = f(x), \quad y(x_0) = 0, \; y'(x_0) = 0. \tag{6}$$

In the case where the coefficients P and Q are constants the solution of the IVP (5) presents no difficulties: We use the method of Section 4.3 to find the general solution of the homogeneous DE and then use the given initial conditions to determine the two constants in that solution. So we will focus on the solution of the IVP (6). Because of the zero initial conditions, the solution of (6) could describe a physical system that is initially at rest and so is sometimes called a **rest solution**.

Green's Function If $y_1(x)$ and $y_2(x)$ form a fundamental set of solutions on the interval I of the associated homogeneous form of (2), then a particular solution of the nonhomogeneous equation (2) on the interval I can be found by variation of parameters. Recall from (3) of Section 4.6, the form of this solution is

$$y_p(x) = u_1(x)y_1(x) + u_2(x)y_2(x). \tag{7}$$

The variable coefficients $u_1(x)$ and $u_2(x)$ in (7) are defined by (9) of Section 4.6:

$$u_1'(x) = -\frac{y_2(x)f(x)}{W}, \quad u_2'(x) = \frac{y_1(x)f(x)}{W}. \tag{8}$$

The linear independence of $y_1(x)$ and $y_2(x)$ on the interval I guarantees that the Wronskian $W = W(y_1(x), y_2(x)) \neq 0$ for all x in I. If x and x_0 are numbers in I, then integrating the derivatives $u_1'(x)$ and $u_2'(x)$ in (8) on the interval $[x_0, x]$ and substituting the results into (7) give

Because $y_1(x)$ and $y_2(x)$ are constant with respect to the integration on t, we can move these functions inside the definite intergrals

$$\begin{aligned} y_p(x) &= y_1(x)\int_{x_0}^{x} \frac{-y_2(t)f(t)}{W(t)}\,dt + y_2(x)\int_{x_0}^{x} \frac{y_1(t)f(t)}{W(t)}\,dt \\ &= \int_{x_0}^{x} \frac{-y_1(x)y_2(t)}{W(t)} f(t)\,dt + \int_{x_0}^{x} \frac{y_1(t)y_2(x)}{W(t)} f(t)\,dt, \end{aligned} \tag{9}$$

where $$W(t) = W(y_1(t), y_2(t)) = \begin{vmatrix} y_1(t) & y_2(t) \\ y_1'(t) & y_2'(t) \end{vmatrix}$$

From the properties of the definite integral, the two integrals in the second line of (9) can be rewritten as a single integral

$$y_p(x) = \int_{x_0}^{x} G(x, t)\, f(t)\, dt. \tag{10}$$

The function $G(x, t)$ in (10),

$$G(x, t) = \frac{y_1(t)y_2(x) - y_1(x)y_2(t)}{W(t)} \tag{11}$$

is called the **Green's function** for the differential equation (2).

Important. Read this paragraph a second time.

Observe that a Green's function (11) depends only on the fundamental solutions $y_1(x)$ and $y_2(x)$ of the associated homogeneous differential equation for (2) and *not* on the forcing function $f(x)$. Therefore all linear second-order differential equations (2) with the same left-hand side but with different forcing functions have the same the Green's function. So an alternative title for (11) is the **Green's function for the second-order differential operator** $L = D^2 + P(x)D + Q(x)$.

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

EXAMPLE 1 Particular Solution

Use (10) and (11) to find a particular solution of $y'' - y = f(x)$.

SOLUTION The solutions of the associated homogeneous equation $y'' - y = 0$ are $y_1 = e^x$, $y_2 = e^{-x}$, and $W(y_1(t), y_2(t)) = -2$. It follows from (11) that the Green's function is

$$G(x, t) = \frac{e^t e^{-x} - e^x e^{-t}}{-2} = \frac{e^{x-t} - e^{-(x-t)}}{2} = \sinh(x - t). \tag{12}$$

Thus from (10), a particular solution of the DE is

$$y_p(x) = \int_{x_0}^{x} \sinh(x - t)\, f(t)\, dt. \tag{13}$$

EXAMPLE 2 General Solutions

Find the general solution of following nonhomogeneous differential equations.

(a) $y'' - y = 1/x$ **(b)** $y'' - y = e^{2x}$

SOLUTION From Example 1, both DEs possess the same complementary function $y_c = c_1 e^{-x} + c_2 e^x$. Moreover, as pointed out in the paragraph preceding Example 1, the Green's function for both differential equations is (12).

(a) With the identifications $f(x) = 1/x$ and $f(t) = 1/t$ we see from (13) that a particular solution of $y'' - y = 1/x$ is $y_p(x) = \int_{x_0}^{x} \frac{\sinh(x - t)}{t}\, dt$. Thus the general solution $y = y_c + y_p$ of the given DE on any interval $[x_0, x]$ not containing the origin is

$$y = c_1 e^x + c_2 e^{-x} + \int_{x_0}^{x} \frac{\sinh(x - t)}{t}\, dt. \tag{14}$$

You should compare this solution with that found in Example 3 of Section 4.6.

(b) With $f(x) = e^{2x}$ in (13), a particular solution of $y'' - y = e^{2x}$ is $y_p(x) = \int_{x_0}^{x} \sinh(x - t)\, e^{2t}\, dt$. The general solution $y = y_c + y_p$ is then

$$y = c_1 e^x + c_2 e^{-x} + \int_{x_0}^{x} \sinh(x - t)\, e^{2t}\, dt. \tag{15}$$

Now consider the special initial-value problem (6) with homogeneous initial conditions. One way of solving the problem when $f(x) \neq 0$ has already been illustrated in Sections 4.4 and 4.6, that is, apply the initial conditions $y(x_0) = 0$, $y'(x_0) = 0$ to the general solution of the nonhomogeneous DE. But there is no actual need to do this because we already have a solution of the IVP at hand; it is the function defined in (10).

THEOREM 4.8.1 Solution of the IVP (6)

The function $y_p(x)$ defined in (10) is the solution of the initial-value problem (6).

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

PROOF By construction we know that $y_p(x)$ in (10) satisfies the nonhomogeneous DE. Next, because a definite integral has the property $\int_a^a = 0$ we have

$$y_p(x_0) = \int_{x_0}^{x_0} G(x_0, t)\, f(t)\, dt = 0.$$

Finally, to show that $y_p'(x_0) = 0$ we utilize the Leibniz formula* for the derivative of an integral:

$$y_p'(x) = \overbrace{G(x, x)f(x)}^{0 \text{ from (11)}} + \int_{x_0}^{x} \frac{y_1(t)y_2'(x) - y_1'(x)y_2(t)}{W(t)} f(t)\, dt.$$

Hence,
$$y_p'(x_0) = \int_{x_0}^{x_0} \frac{y_1(t)y_2'(x_0) - y_1'(x_0)y_2(t)}{W(t)} f(t)\, dt = 0.$$

EXAMPLE 3 Example 2 Revisited

Solve the initial-value problems

(a) $y'' - y = 1/x, \quad y(1) = 0, y'(1) = 0$ **(b)** $y'' - y = e^{2x}, \quad y(0) = 0, y'(0) = 0$

SOLUTION **(a)** With $x_0 = 1$ and $f(t) = 1/t$, it follows from (14) of Example 2 and Theorem 4.8.1 that the solution of the initial-value problem is

$$y_p(x) = \int_1^x \frac{\sinh(x - t)}{t} dt,$$

where $[1, x]$, $x > 0$.

(b) Identifying $x_0 = 0$ and $f(t) = e^{2t}$, we see from (15) that the solution of the IVP is

$$y_p(x) = \int_0^x \sinh(x - t)\, e^{2t}\, dt. \tag{16}$$

In part (b) of Example 3, we can carry out the integration in (16), but bear in mind that x is held constant throughout the integration with respect to t:

$$\begin{aligned} y_p(x) &= \int_0^x \sinh(x - t)\, e^{2t}\, dt = \int_0^x \frac{e^{x-t} - e^{-(x-t)}}{2} e^{2t}\, dt \\ &= \tfrac{1}{2}e^x \int_0^x e^t\, dt - \tfrac{1}{2}e^{-x} \int_0^x e^{3t}\, dt \\ &= \tfrac{1}{3}e^{2x} - \tfrac{1}{2}e^x + \tfrac{1}{6}e^{-x}. \end{aligned}$$

EXAMPLE 4 Using (10) and (11)

Solve the initial-value problem

$$y'' + 4y = x, \quad y(0) = 0, y'(0) = 0.$$

SOLUTION We begin by constructing the Green's function for the given differential equation.

* This formula, usually discussed in advanced calculus, is given by

$$\frac{d}{dx}\int_{u(x)}^{v(x)} F(x, t)dt = F(x, v(x))v'(x) - F(x, u(x))u'(x) + \int_{u(x)}^{v(x)} \frac{\partial}{\partial x} F(x, t)\, dt.$$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

The two linearly independent solutions of $y'' + 4y = 0$ are $y_1(x) = \cos 2x$ and $y_2(x) = \sin 2x$. From (11), with $W(\cos 2t, \sin 2t) = 2$, we find

$$G(x, t) = \frac{\cos 2t \sin 2x - \cos 2x \sin 2t}{2} = \tfrac{1}{2}\sin 2(x - t).$$

Here we have used the trigonometric identity
$\sin(2x - 2t) = \sin 2x \cos 2t - \cos 2x \sin 2t$ ▶

With the further identifications $x_0 = 0$ and $f(t) = t$ in (10) we see that a solution of the given initial-value problem is

$$y_p(x) = \tfrac{1}{2}\int_0^x t \sin 2(x - t)\, dt.$$

If we wish to evaluate the integral, we first write

$$y_p(x) = \tfrac{1}{2}\sin 2x \int_0^x t \cos 2t\, dt - \tfrac{1}{2}\cos 2x \int_0^x t \sin 2t\, dt$$

and then use integration by parts:

$$y_p(x) = \tfrac{1}{2}\sin 2x \left[\tfrac{1}{2}t \sin 2t + \tfrac{1}{4}\cos 2t\right]_0^x - \tfrac{1}{2}\cos 2x \left[-\tfrac{1}{2}t \cos 2t + \tfrac{1}{4}\sin 2t\right]_0^x$$

or $$y_p(x) = \tfrac{1}{4}x - \tfrac{1}{8}\sin 2x.$$

Initial-Value Problems—Continued Finally, we are now in a position to make use of Theorem 4.8.1 to find the solution of the initial-value problem posed in (3). It is simply the function already given in (4).

THEOREM 4.8.2 Solution of the IVP (3)

If $y_h(x)$ is the solution of the initial-value problem (5) and $y_p(x)$ is the solution (10) of the initial-value problem (6) on the interval I, then

$$y(x) = y_h(x) + y_p(x) \tag{17}$$

is the solution of the initial-value problem (3).

PROOF Because $y_h(x)$ is a linear combination of the fundamental solutions, it follows from (10) of Section 4.1 that $y = y_h + y_p$ is a solution of the nonhomogeneous DE. Moreover, since y_h satisfies the initial-conditions in (5) and y_p satisfies the initial conditions in (6), we have,

$$y(x_0) = y_h(x_0) + y_p(x_0) = y_0 + 0 = y_0$$
$$y'(x_0) = y_h'(x_0) + y_p'(x_0) = y_1 + 0 = y_1.$$

Keeping in mind the absence of a forcing function in (5) and the presence of such a term in (6), we see from (17) that the response $y(x)$ of a physical system described by the initial-value problem (3) can be separated into two different responses:

$$y(x) = \underbrace{y_h(x)}_{\substack{\text{response of system}\\ \text{due to initial conditions}\\ y(x_0) = y_0,\ y(x_0) = y_1}} + \underbrace{y_p(x)}_{\substack{\text{response of system}\\ \text{due to the forcing}\\ \text{function } f}} \tag{18}$$

If you wish to peek ahead, the following initial-value problem represents a pure resonance situation for a driven spring/mass system. See pages 200–202.

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

EXAMPLE 5 Using Theorem 4.8.2

Solve the initial-value problem

$$y'' + 4y = \sin 2x, \quad y(0) = 1, y'(0) = -2.$$

SOLUTION We solve two initial-value problems.

First, we solve $y'' + 4y = 0$, $y(0) = 1$, $y'(0) = -2$. By applying the initial conditions to the general solution $y(x) = c_1 \cos 2x + c_2 \sin 2x$ of the homogeneous DE, we find that $c_1 = 1$ and $c_2 = -1$. Therefore, $y_h(x) = \cos 2x - \sin 2x$.

Next we solve $y'' + 4y = \sin 2x$, $y(0) = 0$, $y'(0) = 0$. Since the left-hand side of the differential equation is the same as the DE in Example 4, the Green's function is the same, namely, $G(x, t) = \frac{1}{2}\sin 2(x - t)$. With $f(t) = \sin 2t$ we see from (10) that the solution of this second problem is $y_p(x) = \frac{1}{2}\int_0^x \sin 2(x - t)\sin 2t\, dt$.

Finally, in view of (17) in Theorem 4.8.2, the solution of the original IVP is

$$y(x) = y_h(x) + y_p(x) = \cos 2x - \sin 2x + \frac{1}{2}\int_0^x \sin 2(x - t)\sin 2t\, dt. \tag{19}$$

If desired, we can integrate the definite integral in (19) by using the trigonometric identity

$$\sin A \sin B = \tfrac{1}{2}[\cos(A - B) - \cos(A + B)]$$

with $A = 2(x - t)$ and $B = 2t$:

$$\begin{aligned} y_p(x) &= \frac{1}{2}\int_0^x \sin 2(x - t)\sin 2t\, dt \\ &= \frac{1}{4}\int_0^x [\cos(2x - 4t) - \cos 2x]\, dt \\ &= \frac{1}{4}\left[-\frac{1}{4}\sin(2x - 4t) - t\cos 2x\right]_0^x \\ &= \frac{1}{8}\sin 2x - \frac{1}{4}x\cos 2x. \end{aligned} \tag{20}$$

Hence, the solution (19) can be rewritten as

$$y(x) = y_h(x) + y_p(x) = \cos 2x - \sin 2x + \left(\tfrac{1}{8}\sin 2x - \tfrac{1}{4}x\cos 2x\right),$$

or

$$y(x) = \cos 2x - \tfrac{7}{8}\sin 2x - \tfrac{1}{4}x\cos 2x. \tag{21}$$

Note that the physical significance indicated in (18) is lost in (21) after combining like terms in the two parts of the solution $y(x) = y_h(x) + y_p(x)$.

The beauty of the solution given in (19) is that we can immediately write down the response of a system if the initial conditions remain the same, but the forcing function is changed. For example, if the problem in Example 5 is changed to

$$y'' + 4y = x, \quad y(0) = 1, y'(0) = -2,$$

we simply replace $\sin 2t$ in the integral in (19) by t and the solution is then

$$\begin{aligned} y(x) &= y_h(x) + y_p(x) \\ &= \cos 2x - \sin 2x + \frac{1}{2}\int_0^x t\sin 2(x - t)\, dt \quad \leftarrow \text{see Example 4} \\ &= \tfrac{1}{4}x + \cos 2x - \tfrac{9}{8}\sin 2x. \end{aligned}$$

Because the forcing function f is isolated in the particular solution $y_p(x) = \int_{x_0}^x G(x, t) f(t)\, dt$, the solution in (17) is useful when f is piecewise defined. The next example illustrates this idea.

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

EXAMPLE 6 An Initial-Value Problem

Solve the initial-value problem

$$y'' + 4y = f(x), \quad y(0) = 1, y'(0) = -2,$$

where the forcing function f is piecewise defined:

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 0, & x < 0 \\ \sin 2x, & 0 \le x \le 2\pi \\ 0, & x > 2\pi. \end{cases}$$

SOLUTION From (19), with $\sin 2t$ replaced by $f(t)$, we can write

$$y(x) = \cos 2x - \sin 2x + \tfrac{1}{2}\int_0^x \sin 2(x - t)\, f(t)\, dt.$$

Because f is defined in three pieces, we consider three cases in the evaluation of the definite integral. For $x < 0$,

$$y_p(x) = \tfrac{1}{2}\int_0^x \sin 2(x - t)\, 0\, dt = 0,$$

for $0 \le x \le 2$,

$$y_p(x) = \tfrac{1}{2}\int_0^x \sin 2(x - t) \sin 2t\, dt \leftarrow \text{using the integration in (20)}$$

$$= \tfrac{1}{8}\sin 2x - \tfrac{1}{4}x\cos 2x,$$

and finally for $x > 2\pi$, we can use the integration following Example 5:

$$y_p(x) = \tfrac{1}{2}\int_0^{2\pi} \sin 2(x - t) \sin 2t\, dt + \tfrac{1}{2}\int_{2\pi}^x \sin 2(x - t)\, 0\, dt$$

$$= \tfrac{1}{2}\pi \int_0^{2\pi} \sin 2(x - t) \sin 2t\, dt$$

$$= \tfrac{1}{4}\left[-\tfrac{1}{4}\sin (2x - 4t) - t\cos 2x\right]_0^{2\pi} \leftarrow \text{using the integration in (20)}$$

$$= -\tfrac{1}{16}\sin (2x - 8\pi) - \tfrac{1}{2}\pi\cos 2x + \tfrac{1}{16}\sin 2x \leftarrow \sin(2x - 8\pi) = \sin 2x$$

$$= -\tfrac{1}{2}\pi\cos 2x.$$

Hence $y_p(x)$ is

$$y_p(x) = \begin{cases} 0, & x < 0 \\ \frac{1}{8}\sin 2x - \frac{1}{4}x\cos 2x, & 0 \le x \le 2\pi \\ -\frac{1}{2}\pi\cos 2x, & x > 2\pi. \end{cases}$$

and so

$$y(x) = y_h(x) + y_p(x) = \cos 2x - \sin 2x + y_p(x).$$

Putting all the pieces together we get

$$y(x) = \begin{cases} \cos 2x - \sin 2x, & x < 0 \\ (1 - \frac{1}{4}x)\cos 2x - \frac{7}{8}\sin 2x, & 0 \le x \le 2\pi \\ (1 - \frac{1}{2}\pi)\cos 2x - \sin 2x, & x > 2\pi. \end{cases}$$

The three parts of $y(x)$ are shown in different colors in Figure 4.8.1.

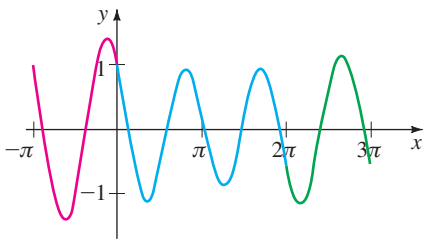


FIGURE 4.8.1 Graph of $y(x)$ in Example 6

We next examine how a boundary value problem (BVP) can be solved using a different kind of Green's function.

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

4.8.2 BOUNDARY-VALUE PROBLEMS

In contrast to a second-order IVP, in which $y(x)$ and $y'(x)$ are specified at the same point, a BVP for a second-order DE involves conditions on $y(x)$ and $y'(x)$ that are specified at two different points $x = a$ and $x = b$. Conditions such as

$$y(a) = 0, \quad y(b) = 0; \qquad y(a) = 0, \quad y'(b) = 0; \qquad y'(a) = 0, \quad y'(b) = 0.$$

are just special cases of the more general homogeneous boundary conditions:

$$A_1y(a) + B_1y'(a) = 0 \tag{22}$$

$$A_2y(b) + B_2y'(b) = 0, \tag{23}$$

where A_1, A_2, B_1, and B_2 are constants. Specifically, our goal is to find a integral solution $y_p(x)$ that is analogous to (10) for nonhomogeneous boundary-value problems of the form

$$\begin{aligned} y'' + P(x)y' + Q(x)y &= f(x), \\ A_1y(a) + B_1y'(a) &= 0 \\ A_2y(b) + B_2y'(b) &= 0. \end{aligned} \tag{24}$$

In addition to the usual assumptions that $P(x)$, $Q(x)$, and $f(x)$ are continuous on $[a, b]$, we assume that the homogeneous problem

$$\begin{aligned} y'' + P(x)y' + Q(x)y &= 0, \\ A_1y(a) + B_1y'(a) &= 0 \\ A_2y(b) + B_2y'(b) &= 0, \end{aligned}$$

possesses only the trivial solution $y = 0$. This latter assumption is sufficient to guarantee that a unique solution of (24) exists and is given by an integral $y_p(x) = \int_a^b G(x, t)\, f(t)dt$, where $G(x, t)$ is a Green's function.

The starting point in the construction of $G(x, t)$ is again the variation of parameters formulas (7) and (8).

Another Green's Function Suppose $y_1(x)$ and $y_2(x)$ are linearly independent solutions on $[a, b]$ of the associated homogeneous form of the DE in (24) and that x is a number in the interval $[a, b]$. Unlike the construction of (9) where we started by integrating the derivatives in (8) over the same interval, we now integrate the first equation in (8) on $[b, x]$ and the second equation in (8) on $[a, x]$:

$$u_1(x) = -\int_b^x \frac{y_2(t)f(t)}{W(t)}dt \quad \text{and} \quad u_2(x) = \int_a^x \frac{y_1(t)f(t)}{W(t)}dt. \tag{25}$$

The reason for integrating $u_1'(x)$ and $u_2'(x)$ over different intervals will become clear shortly. From (25), a particular solution $y_p(x) = u_1(x)y_1(x) + u_2(x)y_2(x)$ of the DE is

$$y_p(x) = y_1(x)\overbrace{\int_x^b \frac{y_2(t)f(t)}{W(t)}dt}^{\text{here we used the minus sign in (25) to reverse the limits of integration}} + y_2(x)\int_a^x \frac{y_1(t)f(t)}{W(t)}dt$$

or

$$y_p(x) = \int_a^x \frac{y_2(x)y_1(t)}{W(t)}f(t)\,dt + \int_x^b \frac{y_1(x)y_2(t)}{W(t)}f(t)dt. \tag{26}$$

The right-hand side of (26) can be written compactly as a single integral

$$y_p(x) = \int_a^b G(x, t)\, f(t)dt, \tag{27}$$

where the function $G(x, t)$ is

$$G(x, t) = \begin{cases} \dfrac{y_1(t)y_2(x)}{W(t)}, & a \le t \le x \\ \dfrac{y_1(x)y_2(t)}{W(t)}, & x \le t \le b. \end{cases} \tag{28}$$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

The piecewise-defined function (28) is called a **Green's function** for the boundary-value problem (24). It can be proved that $G(x, t)$ is a continuous function of x on the interval $[a, b]$.

Now if the solutions $y_1(x)$ and $y_2(x)$ used in the construction of $G(x, t)$ in (28) are chosen in such a manner that at $x = a$, $y_1(x)$ satisfies $A_1y_1(a) + B_1y_1'(a) = 0$, and at $x = b$, $y_2(x)$ satisfies $A_2y_2(b) + B_2y_2'(b) = 0$, then, wondrously, $y_p(x)$ defined in (27) satisfies both homogeneous boundary conditions in (24).

To see this we will need

$$y_p(x) = u_1(x)y_1(x) + u_2(x)y_2(x) \tag{29}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} y_p'(x) &= u_1(x)y_1'(x) + y_1(x)u_1'(x) + u_2(x)y_2'(x) + y_2(x)u_2'(x) \\ &= u_1(x)y_1'(x) + u_2(x)y_2'(x). \end{aligned} \tag{30}$$

The second line in (30) results from the fact that $y_1(x)u_1'(x) + y_2(x)u_2'(x) = 0$. See the discussion in Section 4.6 following (4).

Before proceeding, observe in (25) that $u_1(b) = 0$ and $u_2(a) = 0$. In view of the second of these two properties we can show that $y_p(x)$ satisfies (22) whenever $y_1(x)$ satisfies the same boundary condition. From (29) and (30) we have

$$\begin{aligned} A_1y_p(a) + B_1y_p'(a) &= A_1[u_1(a)y_1(a) + \overbrace{u_2(a)}^{0}y_2(a)] + B_1[u_1(a)y_1'(a) + \overbrace{u_2(a)}^{0}y_2'(a)] \\ &= u_1(a)\underbrace{[A_1y_1(a) + B_1y_1'(a)]}_{0 \text{ from (22)}} = 0. \end{aligned}$$

Likewise, $u_1(b) = 0$ implies that whenever $y_2(x)$ satisfies (23) so does $y_p(x)$:

$$\begin{aligned} A_2y_p(b) + B_2y_p'(b) &= A_2[\overbrace{u_1(b)}^{0}y_1(b) + u_2(b)y_2(b)] + B_2[\overbrace{u_1(b)}^{0}y_1'(b) + u_2(b)y_2'(b)] \\ &= u_2(b)\underbrace{[A_2y_2(b) + B_2y'_2(b)]}_{0 \text{ from (22)}} = 0. \end{aligned}$$

The next theorem summarizes these results.

THEOREM 4.8.3 Solution of the BVP (24)

Let $y_1(x)$ and $y_2(x)$ be linearly independent solutions of

$$y'' + P(x)y' + Q(x)y = 0$$

on $[a, b]$, and suppose $y_1(x)$ and $y_2(x)$ satisfy (22) and (23), respectively. Then the function $y_p(x)$ defined in (27) is a solution of the boundary-value problem (24).

EXAMPLE 7 Using Theorem 4.8.3

Solve the boundary-value problem

$$y'' + 4y = 3, \quad y'(0) = 0, \quad y(\pi/2) = 0.$$

The boundary condition $y'(0) = 0$ is a special case of (22) with $a = 0$, $A_1 = 0$, and $B_1 = 1$. The boundary condition $y(\pi/2) = 0$ is a special case of (23) with $b = \pi/2$, $A_2 = 1$, $B_2 = 0$.

SOLUTION The solutions of the associated homogeneous equation $y'' + 4y = 0$ are $y_1(x) = \cos 2x$ and $y_2(x) = \sin 2x$ and $y_1(x)$ satisfies $y'(0) = 0$ whereas $y_2(x)$ satisfies $y(\pi/2) = 0$. The Wronskian is $W(y_1, y_2) = 2$, and so from (28) we see that the Green's function for the boundary-value problem is

$$G(x, t) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2}\cos 2t \sin 2x, & 0 \le t \le x \\ \frac{1}{2}\cos 2x \sin 2t, & x \le t \le \pi/2. \end{cases}$$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

It follows from Theorem 4.8.3 that a solution of the BVP is (27) with the identifications $a = 0$, $b = \pi/2$, and $f(t) = 3$:

$$y_p(x) = 3\int_0^{\pi/2} G(x, t)\, dt$$
$$= 3 \cdot \tfrac{1}{2}\sin 2x \int_0^x \cos 2t\, dt + 3 \cdot \tfrac{1}{2}\cos 2x \int_x^{\pi/2} \sin 2t\, dt,$$

or, after evaluating the definite integrals, $y_p(x) = \frac{3}{4} + \frac{3}{4}\cos 2x$.

Don't infer from the preceding example that the demand that $y_1(x)$ satisfy (22) and $y_2(x)$ satisfy (23) uniquely determines these functions. As we see in the last example, there is a certain arbitrariness in the selection of these functions.

EXAMPLE 8 A Boundary-Value Problem

Solve the boundary-value problem

$$x^2y'' - 3xy' + 3y = 24x^5, \quad y(1) = 0, \quad y(2) = 0.$$

SOLUTION The differential equation is recognized as a Cauchy-Euler DE. From the auxiliary equation $m(m - 1) - 3m + 3 = (m - 1)(m - 3) = 0$ the general solution of the associated homogeneous equation is $y = c_1x + c_2x^3$. Applying $y(1) = 0$ to this solution implies $c_1 + c_2 = 0$ or $c_1 = -c_2$. By choosing $c_2 = -1$ we get $c_1 = 1$ and $y_1 = x - x^3$. On the other hand, $y(2) = 0$ applied to the general solution shows $2c_1 + 8c_2 = 0$ or $c_1 = -4c_2$. The choice $c_2 = -1$ now gives $c_1 = 4$ and so $y_2(x) = 4x - x^3$. The Wronskian of these two functions is

$$W(y_1(x), y_2(x)) = \begin{vmatrix} x - x^3 & 4x - x^3 \\ 1 - 3x^2 & 4 - 3x^2 \end{vmatrix} = 6x^3.$$

Hence the Green's function for the boundary-value problem is

$$G(x, t) = \begin{cases} \dfrac{(t - t^3)(4x - x^3)}{6t^3}, & 1 \le t \le x \\ \dfrac{(x - x^3)(4t - t^3)}{6t^3}, & x \le t \le 2. \end{cases}$$

In order to identify the correct forcing function f we must write the DE in standard form:

$$y'' - \frac{3}{x}y' + \frac{3}{x^2}y = 24x^3.$$

From this equation we see that $f(t) = 24t^3$ and so $y_p(x)$ in (27) becomes

$$y_p(x) = 24\int_1^2 G(x, t)\, t^3 dt$$
$$= 4(4x - x^3)\int_1^x (t - t^3)\, dt + 4(x - x^3)\int_x^2 (4t - t^3)\, dt.$$

Verify $y_p(x)$ that satisfies the differentia equation and the two boundary conditions.

Straightforward definite integration and algebraic simplification yield the solution $y_p(x) = 3x^5 - 15x^3 + 12x$.

REMARKS

We have barely scratched the surface of the elegant, albeit complicated, theory of Green's functions. Green's functions can also be constructed for linear second-order partial differential equations, but we leave coverage of the latter topic to an advanced course.

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

EXERCISES 4.8

Answers to selected odd-numbered problems begin on page ANS-6.

4.8.1 INITIAL-VALUE PROBLEMS

In Problems 1–6 proceed as in Example 1 to find a particular solution $y_p(x)$ of the given differential equation in the integral form (10).

1. $y'' - 16y = f(x)$ **2.** $y'' + 3y' - 10y = f(x)$

3. $y'' + 2y' + y = f(x)$ **4.** $4y'' - 4y' + y = f(x)$

5. $y'' + 9y = f(x)$ **6.** $y'' - 2y' + 2y = f(x)$

In Problems 7–12 proceed as in Example 2 to find the general solution of the given differential equation. Use the results obtained in Problems 1–6. Do not evaluate the integral that defines $y_p(x)$.

7. $y'' - 16y = xe^{-2x}$ **8.** $y'' + 3y' - 10y = x^2$

9. $y'' + 2y' + y = e^{-x}$ **10.** $4y'' - 4y' + y = \arctan x$

11. $y'' + 9y = x + \sin x$ **12.** $y'' - 2y' + 2y = \cos^2 x$

In Problems 13–18 proceed as in Example 3 to find a solution of the given initial-value problem. Evaluate the integral that defines $y_p(x)$.

13. $y'' - 4y = e^{2x}, y(0) = 0, y'(0) = 0$

14. $y'' - y' = 1, y(0) = 0, y'(0) = 0$

15. $y'' - 10y' + 25y = e^{5x}, y(0) = 0, y'(0) = 0$

16. $y'' + 6y' + 9y = x, y(0) = 0, y'(0) = 0$

17. $y'' + y = \csc x \cot x, y(\pi/2) = 0, y'(\pi/2) = 0$

18. $y'' + y = \sec^2 x, y(\pi) = 0, y'(\pi) = 0$

In Problems 19–30 proceed as in Example 5 to find a solution of the given initial-value problem.

19. $y'' - 4y = e^{2x}, y(0) = 1, y'(0) = -4$

20. $y'' - y' = 1, y(0) = 10, y'(0) = 1$

21. $y'' - 10y' + 25y = e^{5x}, y(0) = -1, y'(0) = 1$

22. $y'' + 6y' + 9y = x, y(0) = 1, y'(0) = -3$

23. $y'' + y = \csc x \cot x, y(\pi/2) = -\pi/2, y'(\pi/2) = -1$

24. $y'' + y = \sec^2 x, y(\pi) = \frac{1}{2}, y'(\pi) = -1$

25. $y'' + 3y' + 2y = \sin e^x, y(0) = -1, y'(0) = 0$

26. $y'' + 3y' + 2y = \dfrac{1}{1 + e^x}, y(0) = 0, y'(0) = 1$

27. $x^2y'' - 2xy' + 2y = x, y(1) = 2, y'(1) = -1$

28. $x^2y'' - 2xy' + 2y = x \ln x, y(1) = 1, y'(1) = 0$

29. $x^2y'' - 6y = \ln x, y(1) = 1, y'(1) = 3$

30. $x^2y'' - xy' + y = x^2, y(1) = 4, y'(1) = 3$

In Problems 31–34 proceed as in Example 6 to find a solution of the initial-value problem with the given piecewise-defined forcing function.

31. $y'' - y = f(x), y(0) = 8, y'(0) = 2,$

where $f(x) = \begin{cases} -1, & x < 0 \\ 1, & x \geq 0 \end{cases}$

32. $y'' - y = f(x), y(0) = 3, y'(0) = 2,$

where $f(x) = \begin{cases} 0, & x < 0 \\ x, & x \geq 0 \end{cases}$

33. $y'' + y = f(x), y(0) = 1, y'(0) = -1,$

where $f(x) = \begin{cases} 0, & x < 0 \\ 10, & 0 \leq x \leq 3\pi \\ 0, & x > 3\pi \end{cases}$

34. $y'' + y = f(x), y(0) = 0, y'(0) = 1,$

where $f(x) = \begin{cases} 0, & x < 0 \\ \cos x, & 0 \leq x \leq 4\pi \\ 0, & x > 4\pi \end{cases}$

4.8.2 BOUNDARY-VALUE PROBLEMS

In Problems 35 and 36, **(a)** use (27) and (28) to find a solution of the boundary-value problem. **(b)** Verify that the function $y_p(x)$ satisfies the differential equations and both boundary-conditions.

35. $y'' = f(x), y(0) = 0, y(1) = 0$

36. $y'' = f(x), y(0) = 0, y(1) + y'(1) = 0$

37. In Problem 35 find a solution of the BVP when $f(x) = 1$.

38. In Problem 36 find a solution of the BVP when $f(x) = x$.

In Problems 39–44 proceed as in Examples 7 and 8 to find a solution of the given boundary-value problem.

39. $y'' + y = 1, y(0) = 0, y(1) = 0$

40. $y'' + 9y = 1, y(0) = 0, y'(\pi) = 0$

41. $y'' - 2y' + 2y = e^x, y(0) = 0, y(\pi/2) = 0$

42. $y'' - y' = e^{2x}, y(0) = 0, y(1) = 0$

43. $x^2y'' + xy' = 1, y(e^{-1}) = 0, y(1) = 0$

44. $x^2y'' - 4xy' + 6y = x^4, y(1) - y'(1) = 0, y(3) = 0$

Discussion Problems

45. Suppose the solution of the boundary-value problem

$$y'' + Py' + Qy = f(x),\ y(a) = 0, y(b) = 0,$$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

$a < b$, is given by $y_p(x) = \int_a^b G(x, t)f(t)dt$ where $y_1(x)$ and $y_2(x)$ are solutions of the associated homogeneous differential equation chosen in the construction of $G(x, t)$ so that $y_1(a) = 0$ and $y_2(b) = 0$. Prove that the solution of the boundary-value problem with nonhomogeneous DE and boundary conditions,

$$y'' + Py' + Qy = f(x),\ y(a) = A, y(b) = B$$

is given by

$$y(x) = y_p(x) + \frac{B}{y_1(b)}y_1(x) + \frac{A}{y_2(a)}y_2(x).$$

[*Hint*: In your proof, you will have to show that $y_1(b) \neq 0$ and $y_2(a) \neq 0$. Reread the assumptions following (24).]

46. Use the result in Problem 45 to solve

$$y'' + y = 1, y(0) = 5, y(1) = -10.$$

4.9 SOLVING SYSTEMS OF LINEAR DEs BY ELIMINATION

REVIEW MATERIAL

- Because the method of systematic elimination uncouples a system into distinct linear ODEs in each dependent variable, this section gives you an opportunity to practice what you learned in Sections 4.3, 4.4 (or 4.5), and 4.6.

INTRODUCTION Simultaneous ordinary differential equations involve two or more equations that contain derivatives of two or more dependent variables—the unknown functions—with respect to a single independent variable. The method of **systematic elimination** for solving systems of differential equations with constant coefficients is based on the algebraic principle of elimination of variables. We shall see that the analogue of *multiplying* an algebraic equation by a constant is *operating* on an ODE with some combination of derivatives.

Systematic Elimination

The elimination of an unknown in a system of linear differential equations is expedited by rewriting each equation in the system in differential operator notation. Recall from Section 4.1 that a single linear equation

$$a_n y^{(n)} + a_{n-1}y^{(n-1)} + \cdots + a_1 y' + a_0 y = g(t),$$

where the a_i, $i = 0, 1, \ldots, n$ are constants, can be written as

$$(a_n D^n + a_{n-1}D^{(n-1)} + \cdots + a_1 D + a_0)y = g(t).$$

If the nth-order differential operator $a_n D^n + a_{n-1}D^{(n-1)} + \cdots + a_1 D + a_0$ factors into differential operators of lower order, then the factors commute. Now, for example, to rewrite the system

$$x'' + 2x' + y'' = x + 3y + \sin t$$
$$x' + y' = -4x + 2y + e^{-t}$$

in terms of the operator D, we first bring all terms involving the dependent variables to one side and group the same variables:

$$\begin{aligned} x'' + 2x' - x + y'' - 3y &= \sin t \\ x' - 4x + y' - 2y &= e^{-t} \end{aligned} \quad \text{is the same as} \quad \begin{aligned} (D^2 + 2D - 1)x + (D^2 - 3)y &= \sin t \\ (D - 4)x + (D - 2)y &= e^{-t}. \end{aligned}$$

Solution of a System

A **solution** of a system of differential equations is a set of sufficiently differentiable functions $x = \phi_1(t), y = \phi_2(t), z = \phi_3(t)$, and so on that satisfies each equation in the system on some common interval I.

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Method of Solution Consider the simple system of linear first-order equations

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{dx}{dt} &= 3y \\ \frac{dy}{dt} &= 2x \end{aligned} \quad \text{or, equivalently,} \quad \begin{aligned} Dx - 3y &= 0 \\ 2x - Dy &= 0. \end{aligned} \tag{1}$$

Operating on the first equation in (1) by D while multiplying the second by -3 and then adding eliminates y from the system and gives $D^2x - 6x = 0$. Since the roots of the auxiliary equation of the last DE are $m_1 = \sqrt{6}$ and $m_2 = -\sqrt{6}$, we obtain

$$x(t) = c_1e^{-\sqrt{6}t} + c_2e^{\sqrt{6}t}. \tag{2}$$

Multiplying the first equation in (1) by 2 while operating on the second by D and then subtracting gives the differential equation for y, $D^2y - 6y = 0$. It follows immediately that

$$y(t) = c_3e^{-\sqrt{6}t} + c_4e^{\sqrt{6}t}. \tag{3}$$

Now (2) and (3) do not satisfy the system (1) for every choice of c_1, c_2, c_3, and c_4 because the system itself puts a constraint on the number of parameters in a solution that can be chosen arbitrarily. To see this, observe that substituting $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ into the first equation of the original system (1) gives, after simplification,

$$(-\sqrt{6}c_1 - 3c_3)e^{-\sqrt{6}t} + (\sqrt{6}c_2 - 3c_4)e^{\sqrt{6}t} = 0.$$

Since the latter expression is to be zero for all values of t, we must have $-\sqrt{6}c_1 - 3c_3 = 0$ and $\sqrt{6}c_2 - 3c_4 = 0$. These two equations enable us to write c_3 as a multiple of c_1 and c_4 as a multiple of c_2:

$$c_3 = -\frac{\sqrt{6}}{3}c_1 \quad \text{and} \quad c_4 = \frac{\sqrt{6}}{3}c_2. \tag{4}$$

Hence we conclude that a solution of the system must be

$$x(t) = c_1e^{-\sqrt{6}t} + c_2e^{\sqrt{6}t}, \qquad y(t) = -\frac{\sqrt{6}}{3}c_1e^{-\sqrt{6}t} + \frac{\sqrt{6}}{3}c_2e^{\sqrt{6}t}.$$

You are urged to substitute (2) and (3) into the second equation of (1) and verify that the same relationship (4) holds between the constants.

EXAMPLE 1 Solution by Elimination

Solve

$$\begin{aligned} Dx + (D + 2)y &= 0 \\ (D - 3)x - \quad 2y &= 0. \end{aligned} \tag{5}$$

SOLUTION Operating on the first equation by $D - 3$ and on the second by D and then subtracting eliminates x from the system. It follows that the differential equation for y is

$$[(D - 3)(D + 2) + 2D]y = 0 \quad \text{or} \quad (D^2 + D - 6)y = 0.$$

Since the characteristic equation of this last differential equation is $m^2 + m - 6 = (m - 2)(m + 3) = 0$, we obtain the solution

$$y(t) = c_1e^{2t} + c_2e^{-3t}. \tag{6}$$

Eliminating y in a similar manner yields $(D^2 + D - 6)x = 0$, from which we find

$$x(t) = c_3e^{2t} + c_4e^{-3t}. \tag{7}$$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

As we noted in the foregoing discussion, a solution of (5) does not contain four independent constants. Substituting (6) and (7) into the first equation of (5) gives

$$(4c_1 + 2c_3)e^{2t} + (-c_2 - 3c_4)e^{-3t} = 0.$$

From $4c_1 + 2c_3 = 0$ and $-c_2 - 3c_4 = 0$ we get $c_3 = -2c_1$ and $c_4 = -\frac{1}{3}c_2$. Accordingly, a solution of the system is

$$x(t) = -2c_1e^{2t} - \frac{1}{3}c_2e^{-3t}, \qquad y(t) = c_1e^{2t} + c_2e^{-3t}.$$

Because we could just as easily solve for c_3 and c_4 in terms of c_1 and c_2, the solution in Example 1 can be written in the alternative form

$$x(t) = c_3e^{2t} + c_4e^{-3t}, \qquad y(t) = -\frac{1}{2}c_3e^{2t} - 3c_4e^{-3t}.$$

This might save you some time. ▶

It sometimes pays to keep one's eyes open when solving systems. Had we solved for x first in Example 1, then y could be found, along with the relationship between the constants, using the last equation in the system (5). You should verify that substituting $x(t)$ into $y = \frac{1}{2}(Dx - 3x)$ yields $y = -\frac{1}{2}c_3e^{2t} - 3c_4e^{-3t}$. Also note in the initial discussion that the relationship given in (4) and the solution $y(t)$ of (1) could also have been obtained by using $x(t)$ in (2) and the first equation of (1) in the form

$$y = \tfrac{1}{3}Dx = -\tfrac{1}{3}\sqrt{6}c_1e^{-\sqrt{6}t} + \tfrac{1}{3}\sqrt{6}c_2e^{\sqrt{6}t}.$$

EXAMPLE 2 Solution by Elimination

Solve

$$\begin{aligned} x' - 4x + y'' &= t^2 \\ x' + x + y' &= 0. \end{aligned} \tag{8}$$

SOLUTION First we write the system in differential operator notation:

$$\begin{aligned} (D - 4)x + D^2y &= t^2 \\ (D + 1)x + Dy &= 0. \end{aligned} \tag{9}$$

Then, by eliminating x, we obtain

$$[(D + 1)D^2 - (D - 4)D]y = (D + 1)t^2 - (D - 4)0$$

or

$$(D^3 + 4D)y = t^2 + 2t.$$

Since the roots of the auxiliary equation $m(m^2 + 4) = 0$ are $m_1 = 0$, $m_2 = 2i$, and $m_3 = -2i$, the complementary function is $y_c = c_1 + c_2\cos 2t + c_3\sin 2t$. To determine the particular solution y_p, we use undetermined coefficients by assuming that $y_p = At^3 + Bt^2 + Ct$. Therefore $y_p' = 3At^2 + 2Bt + C$, $y_p'' = 6At + 2B$, $y_p''' = 6A$,

$$y_p''' + 4y_p' = 12At^2 + 8Bt + 6A + 4C = t^2 + 2t.$$

The last equality implies that $12A = 1$, $8B = 2$, and $6A + 4C = 0$; hence $A = \frac{1}{12}$, $B = \frac{1}{4}$, and $C = -\frac{1}{8}$. Thus

$$y = y_c + y_p = c_1 + c_2\cos 2t + c_3\sin 2t + \frac{1}{12}t^3 + \frac{1}{4}t^2 - \frac{1}{8}t. \tag{10}$$

Eliminating y from the system (9) leads to

$$[(D - 4) - D(D + 1)]x = t^2 \qquad \text{or} \qquad (D^2 + 4)x = -t^2.$$

It should be obvious that $x_c = c_4\cos 2t + c_5\sin 2t$ and that undetermined coefficients can be applied to obtain a particular solution of the form $x_p = At^2 + Bt + C$. In this case the usual differentiations and algebra yield $x_p = -\frac{1}{4}t^2 + \frac{1}{8}$, and so

$$x = x_c + x_p = c_4\cos 2t + c_5\sin 2t - \frac{1}{4}t^2 + \frac{1}{8}. \tag{11}$$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Now c_4 and c_5 can be expressed in terms of c_2 and c_3 by substituting (10) and (11) into either equation of (8). By using the second equation, we find, after combining terms,

$$(c_5 - 2c_4 - 2c_2)\sin 2t + (2c_5 + c_4 + 2c_3)\cos 2t = 0,$$

so $c_5 - 2c_4 - 2c_2 = 0$ and $2c_5 + c_4 + 2c_3 = 0$. Solving for c_4 and c_5 in terms of c_2 and c_3 gives $c_4 = -\frac{1}{5}(4c_2 + 2c_3)$ and $c_5 = \frac{1}{5}(2c_2 - 4c_3)$. Finally, a solution of (8) is found to be

$$x(t) = -\frac{1}{5}(4c_2 + 2c_3)\cos 2t + \frac{1}{5}(2c_2 - 4c_3)\sin 2t - \frac{1}{4}t^2 + \frac{1}{8},$$

$$y(t) = c_1 + c_2\cos 2t + c_3\sin 2t + \frac{1}{12}t^3 + \frac{1}{4}t^2 - \frac{1}{8}t.$$

EXAMPLE 3 A Mixture Problem Revisited

In (3) of Section 3.3 we saw that the system of linear first-order differential equations

$$\frac{dx_1}{dt} = -\frac{2}{25}x_1 + \frac{1}{50}x_2$$
$$\frac{dx_2}{dt} = \frac{2}{25}x_1 - \frac{2}{25}x_2$$

is a model for the number of pounds of salt $x_1(t)$ and $x_2(t)$ in brine mixtures in tanks A and B, respectively, shown in Figure 3.3.1. At that time we were not able to solve the system. But now, in terms of differential operators, the foregoing system can be written as

$$\left(D + \frac{2}{25}\right)x_1 - \frac{1}{50}x_2 = 0$$
$$-\frac{2}{25}x_1 + \left(D + \frac{2}{25}\right)x_2 = 0.$$

Operating on the first equation by $D + \frac{2}{25}$, multiplying the second equation by $\frac{1}{50}$, adding, and then simplifying gives $(625D^2 + 100D + 3)x_1 = 0$. From the auxiliary equation

$$625m^2 + 100m + 3 = (25m + 1)(25m + 3) = 0$$

we see immediately that $x_1(t) = c_1e^{-t/25} + c_2e^{-3t/25}$. We can now obtain $x_2(t)$ by using the first DE of the system in the form $x_2 = 50(D + \frac{2}{25})x_1$. In this manner we find the solution of the system to be

$$x_1(t) = c_1e^{-t/25} + c_2e^{-3t/25}, \qquad x_2(t) = 2c_1e^{-t/25} - 2c_2e^{-3t/25}.$$

In the original discussion on page 108 we assumed that the initial conditions were $x_1(0) = 25$ and $x_2(0) = 0$. Applying these conditions to the solution yields $c_1 + c_2 = 25$ and $2c_1 - 2c_2 = 0$. Solving these equations simultaneously gives $c_1 = c_2 = \frac{25}{2}$. Finally, a solution of the initial-value problem is

$$x_1(t) = \frac{25}{2}e^{-t/25} + \frac{25}{2}e^{-3t/25}, \qquad x_2(t) = 25e^{-t/25} - 25e^{-3t/25}.$$

The graphs of both of these equations are given in Figure 4.9.1. Consistent with the fact that pure water is being pumped into tank A we see in the figure that $x_1(t) \to 0$ and $x_2(t) \to 0$ as $t \to$.

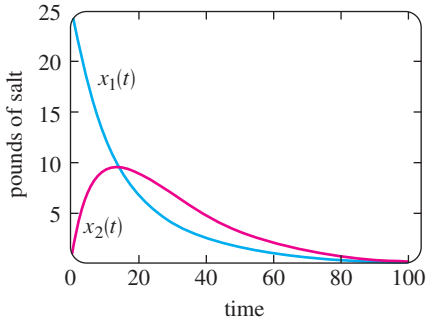


FIGURE 4.9.1 Pounds of salt in tanks A and B in Example 3

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

EXERCISES 4.9

Answers to selected odd-numbered problems begin on page ANS-6.

In Problems 1–20 solve the given system of differential equations by systematic elimination.

1. $\dfrac{dx}{dt} = 2x - y$
$\dfrac{dy}{dt} = x$

2. $\dfrac{dx}{dt} = 4x + 7y$
$\dfrac{dy}{dt} = x - 2y$

3. $\dfrac{dx}{dt} = -y + t$
$\dfrac{dy}{dt} = x - t$

4. $\dfrac{dx}{dt} - 4y = 1$
$\dfrac{dy}{dt} + x = 2$

5. $(D^2 + 5)x - 2y = 0$
$-2x + (D^2 + 2)y = 0$

6. $(D + 1)x + (D - 1)y = 2$
$3x + (D + 2)y = -1$

7. $\dfrac{d^2x}{dt^2} = 4y + e^t$
$\dfrac{d^2y}{dt^2} = 4x - e^t$

8. $\dfrac{d^2x}{dt^2} + \dfrac{dy}{dt} = -5x$
$\dfrac{dx}{dt} + \dfrac{dy}{dt} = -x + 4y$

9. $Dx + D^2y = e^{3t}$
$(D + 1)x + (D - 1)y = 4e^{3t}$

10. $D^2x - Dy = t$
$(D + 3)x + (D + 3)y = 2$

11. $(D^2 - 1)x - y = 0$
$(D - 1)x + Dy = 0$

12. $(2D^2 - D - 1)x - (2D + 1)y = 1$
$(D - 1)x + Dy = -1$

13. $2\dfrac{dx}{dt} - 5x + \dfrac{dy}{dt} = e^t$
$\dfrac{dx}{dt} - x + \dfrac{dy}{dt} = 5e^t$

14. $\dfrac{dx}{dt} + \dfrac{dy}{dt} = e^t$
$-\dfrac{d^2x}{dt^2} + \dfrac{dx}{dt} + x + y = 0$

15. $(D - 1)x + (D^2 + 1)y = 1$
$(D^2 - 1)x + (D + 1)y = 2$

16. $D^2x - 2(D^2 + D)y = \sin t$
$x + Dy = 0$

17. $Dx = y$
$Dy = z$
$Dz = x$

18. $Dx + z = e^t$
$(D - 1)x + Dy + Dz = 0$
$x + 2y + Dz = e^t$

19. $\dfrac{dx}{dt} = 6y$
$\dfrac{dy}{dt} = x + z$
$\dfrac{dz}{dt} = x + y$

20. $\dfrac{dx}{dt} = -x + z$
$\dfrac{dy}{dt} = -y + z$
$\dfrac{dz}{dt} = -x + y$

In Problems 21 and 22 solve the given initial-value problem.

21. $\dfrac{dx}{dt} = -5x - y$
$\dfrac{dy}{dt} = 4x - y$
$x(1) = 0, y(1) = 1$

22. $\dfrac{dx}{dt} = y - 1$
$\dfrac{dy}{dt} = -3x + 2y$
$x(0) = 0, y(0) = 0$

Mathematical Models

23. Projectile Motion A projectile shot from a gun has weight $w = mg$ and velocity $\mathbf{v}$ tangent to its path of motion. Ignoring air resistance and all other forces acting on the projectile except its weight, determine a system of differential equations that describes its path of motion. See Figure 4.9.2. Solve the system. [*Hint*: Use Newton's second law of motion in the x and y directions.]

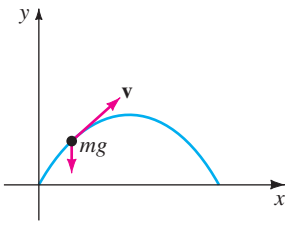


FIGURE 4.9.2 Path of projectile in Problem 23

24. Projectile Motion with Air Resistance Determine a system of differential equations that describes the path of motion in Problem 23 if air resistance is a retarding force $\mathbf{k}$ (of magnitude k) acting tangent to the path of the projectile but opposite to its motion. See Figure 4.9.3. Solve the system. [*Hint*: $\mathbf{k}$ is a multiple of velocity, say, $\beta\mathbf{v}$.]

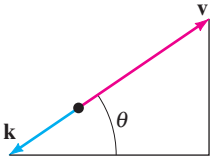


FIGURE 4.9.3 Forces in Problem 24

Discussion Problems

25. Examine and discuss the following system:

$$Dx - 2Dy = t^2$$
$$(D + 1)x - 2(D + 1)y = 1.$$

Computer Lab Assignments

26. Reexamine Figure 4.9.1 in Example 3. Then use a root-finding application to determine when tank B contains more salt than tank A.

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

27. **(a)** Reread Problem 8 of Exercises 3.3. In that problem you were asked to show that the system of differential equations

$$\frac{dx_1}{dt} = -\frac{1}{50}x_1$$
$$\frac{dx_2}{dt} = \frac{1}{50}x_1 - \frac{2}{75}x_2$$
$$\frac{dx_3}{dt} = \frac{2}{75}x_2 - \frac{1}{25}x_3$$

is a model for the amounts of salt in the connected mixing tanks A, B, and C shown in Figure 3.3.7. Solve the system subject to $x_1(0) = 15$, $x_2(t) = 10$, $x_3(t) = 5$.

(b) Use a CAS to graph $x_1(t)$, $x_2(t)$, and $x_3(t)$ in the same coordinate plane (as in Figure 4.9.1) on the interval [0, 200].

(c) Because only pure water is pumped into Tank A, it stands to reason that the salt will eventually be flushed out of all three tanks. Use a root-finding application of a CAS to determine the time when the amount of salt in each tank is less than or equal to 0.5 pound. When will the amounts of salt $x_1(t)$, $x_2(t)$, and $x_3(t)$ be simultaneously less than or equal to 0.5 pound?

4.10 NONLINEAR DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS

REVIEW MATERIAL

- Sections 2.2 and 2.5
- Section 4.2
- A review of Taylor series from calculus is also recommended.

INTRODUCTION The difficulties that surround higher-order *nonlinear* differential equations and the few methods that yield analytic solutions are examined next. Two of the solution methods considered in this section employ a change of variable to reduce a nonlinear second-order DE to a first-order DE. In that sense these methods are analogous to the material in Section 4.2.

Some Differences There are several significant differences between linear and nonlinear differential equations. We saw in Section 4.1 that homogeneous linear equations of order two or higher have the property that a linear combination of solutions is also a solution (Theorem 4.1.2). Nonlinear equations do not possess this property of superposability. See Problems 1 and 18 in Exercises 4.10. We can find general solutions of linear first-order DEs and higher-order equations with constant coefficients. Even when we can solve a nonlinear first-order differential equation in the form of a one-parameter family, this family does not, as a rule, represent a general solution. Stated another way, nonlinear first-order DEs can possess singular solutions, whereas linear equations cannot. But the major difference between linear and nonlinear equations of order two or higher lies in the realm of solvability. Given a linear equation, there is a chance that we can find some form of a solution that we can look at—an explicit solution or perhaps a solution in the form of an infinite series (see Chapter 6). On the other hand, nonlinear higher-order differential equations virtually defy solution by analytical methods. Although this might sound disheartening, there are still things that can be done. As was pointed out at the end of Section 1.3, we can always analyze a nonlinear DE qualitatively and numerically.

Let us make it clear at the outset that nonlinear higher-order differential equations are important—dare we say even more important than linear equations?—because as we fine-tune the mathematical model of, say, a physical system, we also increase the likelihood that this higher-resolution model will be nonlinear.

We begin by illustrating an analytical method that *occasionally* enables us to find explicit/implicit solutions of special kinds of nonlinear second-order differential equations.

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Reduction of Order Nonlinear second-order differential equations $F(x, y', y'') = 0$, where the dependent variable y is missing, and $F(y, y', y'') = 0$, where the independent variable x is missing, can sometimes be solved by using first-order methods. Each equation can be reduced to a first-order equation by means of the substitution $u = y'$.

Dependent Variable Missing The next example illustrates the substitution technique for an equation of the form $F(x, y', y'') = 0$. If $u = y'$, then the differential equation becomes $F(x, u, u') = 0$. If we can solve this last equation for u, we can find y by integration. Note that since we are solving a second-order equation, its solution will contain two arbitrary constants.

EXAMPLE 1 Dependent Variable y Is Missing

Solve $y'' = 2x(y')^2$.

SOLUTION If we let $u = y'$, then $du/dx = y''$. After substituting, the second-order equation reduces to a first-order equation with separable variables; the independent variable is x and the dependent variable is u:

$$\frac{du}{dx} = 2xu^2 \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{du}{u^2} = 2x\,dx$$

$$\int u^{-2}\,du = \int 2x\,dx$$

$$-u^{-1} = x^2 + c_1^2.$$

The constant of integration is written as c_1^2 for convenience. The reason should be obvious in the next few steps. Because $u^{-1} = 1/y'$, it follows that

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = -\frac{1}{x^2 + c_1^2},$$

and so $$y = -\int \frac{dx}{x^2 + c_1^2} \quad \text{or} \quad y = -\frac{1}{c_1}\tan^{-1}\frac{x}{c_1} + c_2.$$

Independent Variable Missing Next we show how to solve an equation that has the form $F(y, y', y'') = 0$. Once more we let $u = y'$, but because the independent variable x is missing, we use this substitution to transform the differential equation into one in which the independent variable is y and the dependent variable is u. To this end we use the Chain Rule to compute the second derivative of y:

$$y'' = \frac{du}{dx} = \frac{du}{dy}\frac{dy}{dx} = u\frac{du}{dy}.$$

In this case the first-order equation that we must now solve is

$$F\left(y, u, u\frac{du}{dy}\right) = 0.$$

EXAMPLE 2 Independent Variable x Is Missing

Solve $yy'' = (y')^2$.

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

SOLUTION With the aid of $u = y'$, the Chain Rule shown above, and separation of variables, the given differential equation becomes

$$y\left(u\frac{du}{dy}\right) = u^2 \qquad \text{or} \qquad \frac{du}{u} = \frac{dy}{y}.$$

Integrating the last equation then yields $\ln|u| = \ln|y| + c_1$, which, in turn, gives $u = c_2 y$, where the constant $\pm e^{c_1}$ has been relabeled as c_2. We now resubstitute $u = dy/dx$, separate variables once again, integrate, and relabel constants a second time:

$$\int \frac{dy}{y} = c_2 \int dx \qquad \text{or} \qquad \ln|y| = c_2 x + c_3 \qquad \text{or} \qquad y = c_4 e^{c_2 x}.$$

Use of Taylor Series In some instances a solution of a nonlinear initial-value problem, in which the initial conditions are specified at x_0, can be approximated by a Taylor series centered at x_0.

EXAMPLE 3 Taylor Series Solution of an IVP

Let us assume that a solution of the initial-value problem

$$y'' = x + y - y^2, \quad y(0) = -1, \quad y'(0) = 1 \tag{1}$$

exists. If we further assume that the solution $y(x)$ of the problem is analytic at 0, then $y(x)$ possesses a Taylor series expansion centered at 0:

$$y(x) = y(0) + \frac{y'(0)}{1!}x + \frac{y''(0)}{2!}x^2 + \frac{y'''(0)}{3!}x^3 + \frac{y^{(4)}(0)}{4!}x^4 + \frac{y^{(5)}(0)}{5!}x^5 + \cdots. \tag{2}$$

Note that the values of the first and second terms in the series (2) are known since those values are the specified initial conditions $y(0) = -1$, $y'(0) = 1$. Moreover, the differential equation itself defines the value of the second derivative at 0: $y''(0) = 0 + y(0) - y(0)^2 = 0 + (-1) - (-1)^2 = -2$. We can then find expressions for the higher derivatives y''', $y^{(4)}, \ldots$ by calculating the successive derivatives of the differential equation:

$$y'''(x) = \frac{d}{dx}(x + y - y^2) = 1 + y' - 2yy' \tag{3}$$

$$y^{(4)}(x) = \frac{d}{dx}(1 + y' - 2yy') = y'' - 2yy'' - 2(y')^2 \tag{4}$$

$$y^{(5)}(x) = \frac{d}{dx}(y'' - 2yy'' - 2(y')^2) = y''' - 2yy''' - 6y'y'' \tag{5}$$

and so on. Now using $y(0) = -1$ and $y'(0) = 1$, we find from (3) that $y'''(0) = 4$. From the values $y(0) = -1$, $y'(0) = 1$, and $y''(0) = -2$ we find $y^{(4)}(0) = -8$ from (4). With the additional information that $y'''(0) = 4$, we then see from (5) that $y^{(5)}(0) = 24$. Hence from (2) the first six terms of a series solution of the initial-value problem (1) are

$$y(x) = -1 + x - x^2 + \frac{2}{3}x^3 - \frac{1}{3}x^4 + \frac{1}{5}x^5 + \cdots.$$

Use of a Numerical Solver Numerical methods, such as Euler's method or the Runge-Kutta method, are developed solely for first-order differential equations and then are extended to systems of first-order equations. To analyze an nth-order initial-value problem numerically, we express the nth-order ODE as a system of n first-order equations. In brief, here is how it is done for a second-order initial-value problem: First, solve

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

for y''—that is, put the DE into normal form $y'' = f(x, y, y')$—and then let $y' = u$. For example, if we substitute $y' = u$ in

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = f(x, y, y'), \quad y(x_0) = y_0, \quad y'(x_0) = u_0, \tag{6}$$

then $y'' = u'$ and $y'(x_0) = u(x_0)$, so the initial-value problem (6) becomes

$$\begin{aligned} &\textit{Solve}: && \begin{cases} y' = u \\ u' = f(x, y, u) \end{cases} \\ &\textit{Subject to}: && y(x_0) = y_0, u(x_0) = u_0. \end{aligned}$$

However, it should be noted that a commercial numerical solver *might not* require* that you supply the system.

EXAMPLE 4 Graphical Analysis of Example 3

Following the foregoing procedure, we find that the second-order initial-value problem in Example 3 is equivalent to

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = u$$
$$\frac{du}{dx} = x + y - y^2$$

with initial conditions $y(0) = -1, u(0) = 1$. With the aid of a numerical solver we get the solution curve shown in blue in Figure 4.10.1. For comparison the graph of the fifth-degree Taylor polynomial $T_5(x) = -1 + x - x^2 + \frac{2}{3}x^3 - \frac{1}{3}x^4 + \frac{1}{5}x^5$ is shown in red. Although we do not know the interval of convergence of the Taylor series obtained in Example 3, the closeness of the two curves in a neighborhood of the origin suggests that the power series may converge on the interval $(-1, 1)$.

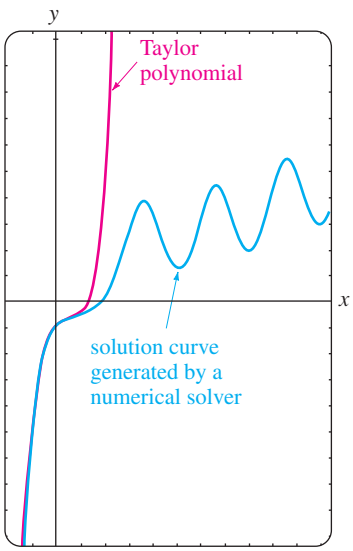


FIGURE 4.10.1 Comparison of two approximate solutions in Example 1

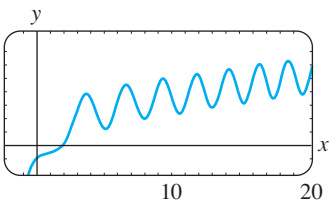


FIGURE 4.10.2 Numerical solution curve for the IVP in (1)

Qualitative Questions The blue numerical solution curve in Figure 4.10.1 raises some questions of a qualitative nature: Is the solution of the original initial-value problem oscillatory as $x \to$? The graph generated by a numerical solver on the larger interval shown in Figure 4.10.2 would seem to *suggest* that the answer is yes. But this single example—or even an assortment of examples—does not answer the basic question as to whether *all* solutions of the differential equation $y'' = x + y - y^2$ are oscillatory in nature. Also, what is happening to the solution curve in Figure 4.10.2 when x is near -1? What is the behavior of solutions of the differential equation as $x \to -\infty$? Are solutions bounded as $x \to$? Questions such as these are not easily answered, in general, for nonlinear second-order differential equations. But certain kinds of second-order equations lend themselves to a systematic qualitative analysis, and these, like their first-order relatives encountered in Section 2.1, are the kind that have no explicit dependence on the independent variable. Second-order ODEs of the form

$$F(y, y', y'') = 0 \qquad \text{or} \qquad \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = f(y, y'),$$

equations free of the independent variable x, are called **autonomous.** The differential equation in Example 2 is autonomous, and because of the presence of the x term on its right-hand side, the equation in Example 3 is nonautonomous. For an in-depth treatment of the topic of stability of autonomous second-order differential equations and autonomous systems of differential equations, refer to Chapter 10 in *Differential Equations with Boundary-Value Problems.*

*Some numerical solvers require only that a second-order differential equation be expressed in normal form $y'' = f(x, y, y')$. The translation of the single equation into a system of two equations is then built into the computer program, since the first equation of the system is always $y' = u$ and the second equation is $u' = f(x, y, u)$.

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

EXERCISES 4.10

Answers to selected odd-numbered problems begin on page ANS-7.

In Problems 1 and 2 verify that y_1 and y_2 are solutions of the given differential equation but that $y = c_1y_1 + c_2y_2$ is, in general, not a solution.

1. $(y'')^2 = y^2; \quad y_1 = e^x, y_2 = \cos x$

2. $yy'' = \frac{1}{2}(y')^2; \quad y_1 = 1, y_2 = x^2$

In Problems 3–8 solve the given differential equation by using the substitution $u = y'$.

3. $y'' + (y')^2 + 1 = 0$ **4.** $y'' = 1 + (y')^2$

5. $x^2y'' + (y')^2 = 0$ **6.** $(y + 1)y'' = (y')^2$

7. $y'' + 2y(y')^3 = 0$ **8.** $y^2y'' = y'$

In Problems 9 and 10 solve the given initial-value problem.

9. $2y'y'' = 1, y(0) = 2, y'(0) = 1$

10. $y'' + x(y')^2 = 0, y(1) = 4, y'(1) = 2$

11. Consider the initial-value problem

$$y'' + yy' = 0, \quad y(0) = 1, y'(0) = -1.$$

(a) Use the DE and a numerical solver to graph the solution curve.

(b) Find an explicit solution of the IVP. Use a graphing utility to graph this solution.

(c) Find an interval of definition for the solution in part (b).

12. Find two solutions of the initial-value problem

$$(y'')^2 + (y')^2 = 1, \quad y\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right) = \frac{1}{2}, \quad y'\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right) = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}.$$

Use a numerical solver to graph the solution curves.

In Problems 13 and 14 show that the substitution $u = y'$ leads to a Bernoulli equation. Solve this equation (see Section 2.5).

13. $xy'' = y' + (y')^3$ **14.** $xy'' = y' + x(y')^2$

In Problems 15–18 proceed as in Example 3 and obtain the first six nonzero terms of a Taylor series solution, centered at 0, of the given initial-value problem. Use a numerical solver and a graphing utility to compare the solution curve with the graph of the Taylor polynomial.

15. $y'' = x + y^2, \quad y(0) = 1, y'(0) = 1$

16. $y'' + y^2 = 1, \quad y(0) = 2, y'(0) = 3$

17. $y'' = x^2 + y^2 - 2y', \quad y(0) = 1, y'(0) = 1$

18. $y'' = e^y, \quad y(0) = 0, y'(0) = -1$

19. In calculus the curvature of a curve that is defined by a function $y = f(x)$ is defined as

$$\kappa = \frac{y''}{[1 + (y')^2]^{3/2}}.$$

Find $y = f(x)$ for which $\kappa = 1$. [*Hint*: For simplicity, ignore constants of integration.]

Discussion Problems

20. In Problem 1 we saw that $\cos x$ and e^x were solutions of the nonlinear equation $(y'')^2 - y^2 = 0$. Verify that $\sin x$ and e^{-x} are also solutions. Without attempting to solve the differential equation, discuss how these explicit solutions can be found by using knowledge about linear equations. Without attempting to verify, discuss why the linear combinations $y = c_1e^x + c_2e^{-x} + c_3\cos x + c_4\sin x$ and $y = c_2e^{-x} + c_4\sin x$ are not, in general, solutions, but the two special linear combinations $y = c_1e^x + c_2e^{-x}$ and $y = c_3\cos x + c_4\sin x$ *must* satisfy the differential equation.

21. Discuss how the method of reduction of order considered in this section can be applied to the third-order differential equation $y''' = \sqrt{1 + (y'')^2}$. Carry out your ideas and solve the equation.

22. Discuss how to find an alternative two-parameter family of solutions for the nonlinear differential equation $y'' = 2x(y')^2$ in Example 1. [*Hint*: Suppose that $-c_1^2$ is used as the constant of integration instead of $+c_1^2$.]

Mathematical Models

23. Motion in a For ce Field A mathematical model for the position $x(t)$ of a body moving rectilinearly on the x-axis in an inverse-square force field is given by

$$\frac{d^2x}{dt^2} = -\frac{k^2}{x^2}.$$

Suppose that at $t = 0$ the body starts from rest from the position $x = x_0$, $x_0 > 0$. Show that the velocity of the body at time t is given by $v^2 = 2k^2(1/x - 1/x_0)$. Use the last expression and a CAS to carry out the integration to express time t in terms of x.

24. A mathematical model for the position $x(t)$ of a moving object is

$$\frac{d^2x}{dt^2} + \sin x = 0.$$

Use a numerical solver to graphically investigate the solutions of the equation subject to $x(0) = 0$, $x'(0) = x_1$,

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

$x_1 \geq 0$. Discuss the motion of the object for $t \geq 0$ and for various choices of x_1. Investigate the equation

$$\frac{d^2x}{dt^2} + \frac{dx}{dt} + \sin x = 0$$

in the same manner. Give a possible physical interpretation of the dx/dt term.

CHAPTER 4 IN REVIEW

Answers to selected odd-numbered problems begin on page ANS-7.

Answer Problems 1–10 without referring back to the text. Fill in the blank or answer true or false.

1. The only solution of the initial-value problem $y'' + x^2y = 0, y(0) = 0, y'(0) = 0$ is _____.

2. For the method of undetermined coefficients, the assumed form of the particular solution y_p for $y'' - y = 1 + e^x$ is _____.

3. A constant multiple of a solution of a linear differential equation is also a solution. _____

4. If the set consisting of two functions f_1 and f_2 is linearly independent on an interval I, then the Wronskian $W(f_1, f_2) \neq 0$ for all x in I. _____

5. If $y = \sin 5x$ is a solution of a homogeneous linear second-order differential with constant coefficients, then the general solution of the DE is _____.

6. If $y = 1 - x + 6x^2 + 3e^x$ is a solution of a homogeneous fourth-order linear differential equation with constant coefficients, then the roots of the auxiliary equation are _____.

7. If $y = c_1x^2 + c_2x^2 \ln x, x > 0$, is the general solution of a homogeneous second-order Cauchy-Euler equation, then the DE is _____.

8. $y_p = Ax^2$ is particular solution of $y''' + y'' = 1$ for $A =$ _____.

9. If $y_{p_1} = x$ is a particular solution of $y'' + y = x$ and $y_{p_2} = x^2 - 2$ is a particular solution of $y'' + y = x^2$, then a particular solution of $y'' + y = x^2 + x$ is _____.

10. If $y_1 = e^x$ and $y_2 = e^{-x}$ are solutions of homogeneous linear differential equation, then necessarily $y = -5e^{-x} + 10e^x$ is also a solution of the DE. _____

11. Give an interval over which the set of two functions $f_1(x) = x^2$ and $f_2(x) = x|x|$ is linearly independent. Then give an interval over which the set consisting of f_1 and f_2 is linearly dependent.

12. Without the aid of the Wronskian, determine whether the given set of functions is linearly independent or linearly dependent on the indicated interval.

(a) $f_1(x) = \ln x, f_2(x) = \ln x^2, (0, \quad)$

(b) $f_1(x) = x^n, f_2(x) = x^{n+1}, n = 1, 2, \ldots, (-\infty, \quad)$

(c) $f_1(x) = x, f_2(x) = x + 1, (-\infty, \quad)$

(d) $f_1(x) = \cos\left(x + \frac{\pi}{2}\right), f_2(x) = \sin x, (-\infty, \quad)$

(e) $f_1(x) = 0, f_2(x) = x, (-5, 5)$

(f) $f_1(x) = 2, f_2(x) = 2x, (-\infty, \quad)$

(g) $f_1(x) = x^2, f_2(x) = 1 - x^2, f_3(x) = 2 + x^2, (-\infty, \quad)$

(h) $f_1(x) = xe^{x+1}, f_2(x) = (4x - 5)e^x, f_3(x) = xe^x, (-\infty, \quad)$

13. Suppose $m_1 = 3$, $m_2 = -5$, and $m_3 = 1$ are roots of multiplicity one, two, and three, respectively, of an auxiliary equation. Write down the general solution of the corresponding homogeneous linear DE if it is

(a) an equation with constant coefficients,

(b) a Cauchy-Euler equation.

14. Consider the differential equation $ay'' + by' + cy = g(x)$, where a, b, and c are constants. Choose the input functions $g(x)$ for which the method of undetermined coefficients is applicable and the input functions for which the method of variation of parameters is applicable.

(a) $g(x) = e^x \ln x$ **(b)** $g(x) = x^3 \cos x$

(c) $g(x) = \dfrac{\sin x}{e^x}$ **(d)** $g(x) = 2x^{-2}e^x$

(e) $g(x) = \sin^2 x$ **(f)** $g(x) = \dfrac{e^x}{\sin x}$

In Problems 15–30 use the procedures developed in this chapter to find the general solution of each differential equation.

15. $y'' - 2y' - 2y = 0$

16. $2y'' + 2y' + 3y = 0$

17. $y''' + 10y'' + 25y' = 0$

18. $2y''' + 9y'' + 12y' + 5y = 0$

19. $3y''' + 10y'' + 15y' + 4y = 0$

20. $2y^{(4)} + 3y''' + 2y'' + 6y' - 4y = 0$

21. $y'' - 3y' + 5y = 4x^3 - 2x$

22. $y'' - 2y' + y = x^2e^x$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

23. $y''' - 5y'' + 6y' = 8 + 2\sin x$

24. $y''' - y'' = 6$

25. $y'' - 2y' + 2y = e^x \tan x$

26. $y'' - y = \dfrac{2e^x}{e^x + e^{-x}}$

27. $6x^2y'' + 5xy' - y = 0$

28. $2x^3y''' + 19x^2y'' + 39xy' + 9y = 0$

29. $x^2y'' - 4xy' + 6y = 2x^4 + x^2$

30. $x^2y'' - xy' + y = x^3$

31. Write down the form of the general solution $y = y_c + y_p$ of the given differential equation in the two cases $\omega \neq \alpha$ and $\omega = \alpha$. Do not determine the coefficients in y_p.

(a) $y'' + \omega^2 y = \sin \alpha x$ **(b)** $y'' - \omega^2 y = e^{\alpha x}$

32. **(a)** Given that $y = \sin x$ is a solution of

$$y^{(4)} + 2y''' + 11y'' + 2y' + 10y = 0,$$

find the general solution of the DE *without the aid of a calculator or a computer.*

(b) Find a linear second-order differential equation with constant coefficients for which $y_1 = 1$ and $y_2 = e^{-x}$ are solutions of the associated homogeneous equation and $y_p = \frac{1}{2}x^2 - x$ is a particular solution of the nonhomogeneous equation.

33. **(a)** Write the general solution of the fourth-order DE $y^{(4)} - 2y'' + y = 0$ entirely in terms of hyperbolic functions.

(b) Write down the form of a particular solution of $y^{(4)} - 2y'' + y = \sinh x$.

34. Consider the differential equation

$$x^2y'' - (x^2 + 2x)y' + (x + 2)y = x^3.$$

Verify that $y_1 = x$ is one solution of the associated homogeneous equation. Then show that the method of reduction of order discussed in Section 4.2 leads to a second solution y_2 of the homogeneous equation as well as a particular solution y_p of the nonhomogeneous equation. Form the general solution of the DE on the interval $(0, \quad)$.

In Problems 35–40 solve the given differential equation subject to the indicated conditions.

35. $y'' - 2y' + 2y = 0, \quad y(\pi/2) = 0, y(\pi) = -1$

36. $y'' + 2y' + y = 0, \quad y(-1) = 0, y'(0) = 0$

37. $y'' - y = x + \sin x, \quad y(0) = 2, y'(0) = 3$

38. $y'' + y = \sec^3 x, \quad y(0) = 1, y'(0) = \frac{1}{2}$

39. $y'y'' = 4x, \quad y(1) = 5, y'(1) = 2$

40. $2y'' = 3y^2, \quad y(0) = 1, y'(0) = 1$

41. **(a)** Use a CAS as an aid in finding the roots of the auxiliary equation for

$$12y^{(4)} + 64y''' + 59y'' - 23y' - 12y = 0.$$

Give the general solution of the equation.

(b) Solve the DE in part (a) subject to the initial conditions $y(0) = -1$, $y'(0) = 2$, $y''(0) = 5$, $y'''(0) = 0$. Use a CAS as an aid in solving the resulting systems of four equations in four unknowns.

42. Find a member of the family of solutions of $xy'' + y' + \sqrt{x} = 0$ whose graph is tangent to the x-axis at $x = 1$. Use a graphing utility to graph the solution curve.

In Problems 43–46 use systematic elimination to solve the given system.

43. $\dfrac{dx}{dt} + \dfrac{dy}{dt} = 2x + 2y + 1$

$\dfrac{dx}{dt} + 2\dfrac{dy}{dt} = \quad y + 3$

44. $\dfrac{dx}{dt} = 2x + y + t - 2$

$\dfrac{dy}{dt} = 3x + 4y - 4t$

45. $(D - 2)x \quad -y = -e^t$

$-3x + (D - 4)y = -7e^t$

46. $(D + 2)x + (D + 1)y = \sin 2t$

$5x + (D + 3)y = \cos 2t$

Copyright 2012 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.